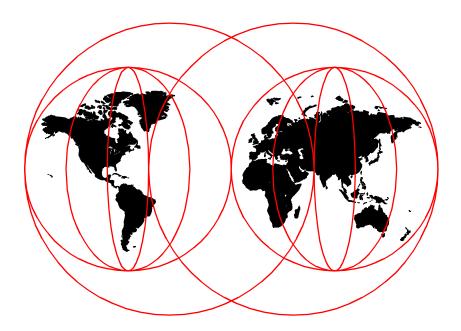


Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

Jakob Carstensen, Lenz Grimmer, Ivo Gomilsek, Jay Haskins, Joe Kaplenk



International Technical Support Organization

www.redbooks.ibm.com

SG24-5863-00



International Technical Support Organization

Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

December 1999

– Take Note! -

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information in Appendix B, "Special notices" on page 251.

First Edition (December 1999)

This edition applies to preparing for or installing SuSE Linux on IBM Netfinity systems.

Comments may be addressed to: IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization Dept. HZ8 Building 678 P.O. Box 12195 Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-2195

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a non-exclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1999. All rights reserved.

Note to U.S Government Users – Documentation related to restricted rights – Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Preface The team that wrote this redbook Comments welcome	ix
Chapter 1. Introduction	1
Chapter 2. Linux installation2.1 Hardware considerations2.2 Making the CD-ROM bootable2.3 Basic Linux installation2.3.1 Booting the installation system2.3.2 Starting the installation2.3.3 Partitioning and creation of filesystems.2.3.4 Software package selection and installation2.3.5 LILO - the Linux Loader2.3.6 Time zone and clock settings2.3.7 Network configuration2.3.8 Mouse configuration2.4 Installation with ServeRAID2.4.1 Preparing the installation procedure2.5 XFree86 configuration	4 5 6 8 . 13 . 15 . 24 . 29 . 31 . 32 . 38 . 40 . 41 . 43
Chapter 3. Basic system administration 3.1 Adding and removing software packages using YaST 3.2 Package management using RPM 3.3 User and group administration using YaST 3.4 Adding users on the command line 3.4.1 Modifying users - the command line version 3.4.2 Deleting users - the command line version 3.4.3 Group administration using YaST 3.5 Network configuration with YaST 3.6 Changing the configuration file with YaST 3.6.1 Finding Linux commands	. 51 . 56 . 57 . 61 . 63 . 64 . 64 . 65 . 70
Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities 4.1 Installing ipsutils.rpm 4.2 ipssend commands 4.2.1 getconfig command 4.2.2 getstatus command 4.2.3 devinfo command	. 75 . 76 . 76 . 81

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

4.2.4 hsrebuild command834.2.5 synch command854.2.6 unattended command864.2.7 rebuild command874.2.8 Replacing a defunct drive884.2.9 Replacing a defunct drive with disabled Hot Spare Rebuild894.2.10 Replacing a defunct drive with a hot spare drive installed894.2.11 Using the ipsmon command954.2.12 Using the ipsadm command95
Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System1035.1 Installation of software1055.2 DNS sample configuration1055.3 Configuration tips111
Chapter 6. Samba1136.1 What can you do with Samba?1136.2 Setting up Samba1136.2.1 Configuring Samba1146.2.2 Starting and stopping the Samba server1226.2.3 Starting Samba as startup service1226.2.4 Using SWAT1226.3 Configuration and tuning hints1406.4 Sources of additional information141
Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers1437.1 The IBM HTTP Server1447.2 Apache HTTP Server installation1457.3 IBM HTTP Server installation1467.3.1 Activating IBM HTTPD on system bootup1487.3.2 Setting up the Administration Server1497.4 General performance tips154
Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains1578.1 What is a firewall?1578.2 What can you do with Linux firewall?1578.3 What do you need to run an IP packet filter?1588.4 Network configuration for a firewall implementation1588.5 How to permanently enable IP forwarding1608.6 Your first IP Chains success1618.7 Setting up IP masquerading on SuSE Linux1628.8 How IP packets travel through the gateway1638.9 Using IP Chains1658.9.1 How to create a rule166

8.9.2 Making the rules permanent
Chapter 9. DHCP - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol1699.1 What is DHCP?1699.2 Why should you use DHCP?1699.3 Implementation on Linux1699.4 Setting up a DCHP relay agent.171
Chapter 10. Sendmail.17310.1 What is Sendmail?17310.2 What can you do with Sendmail?17310.3 Starting up Sendmail in SuSE LInux.17310.4 Sending mail to local users.17410.5 Setting up a simple mail server for a local net17510.6 Using the /etc/aliases file17610.7 Advanced Sendmail configuration in SuSE Linux17710.8 Sources of additional information178
Chapter 11. NFS - Network File System 181 11.1 Software installation 181 11.2 Allowing NFS access to data - the server side configuration 182 11.2.1 Starting the NFS server processes 185 11.3 Accessing data remotely with NFS - the client side 186
Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System18912.1 What is NIS?18912.2 How can I use NIS?18912.3 Implementation on Linux19012.3.1 Server side configuration19012.3.2 Installing a NIS slave server19312.3.3 NIS Client configuration19412.4 Sources of additional information197
Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 199 13.1 What is LDAP? 199 13.1.1 Directory Services 199 13.1.2 X.500 200 13.1.3 How you can use LDAP 200 13.2 LDAP basics 200
13.2.1 LDIF files 201 13.3 Implementation on Linux 201 13.3.1 Roaming Profiles for Netscape 203 13.3.2 Start OpenLDAP 206

13.3.3 Configuring Netscape 2 13.4 Sources of additional information 2	
Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 2 14.1 General configuration hints 2 14.2 System monitoring and performance test tools 2	211
Chapter 15. Backup and recovery with BRU.15.1 What is BRU?15.2 Installing BRU15.3 Basic commands15.3.1 Basic backup15.3.2 Basic restore15.3.3 Basic verification and listing commands15.4 X Interface15.4.1 The big buttons.15.4.2 Creating archives15.4.3 Scheduling15.4.4 Restoring files15.4.5 Listing and verifying archives15.5 Summary	223 225 225 225 225 225 226 226 227 228 229 229 229
Chapter 16. Setting up a Beowulf cluster	231
Appendix A. RAID levels 2 A.1 What is RAID? 2	235
A.1.1 RAID-0 A.1.2 RAID-1 and RAID-1E A.1.3 RAID-10 A.1.4 RAID-5 A.1.5 RAID-5 enhanced A.1.6 Orthogonal RAID-5 A.1.7 Performance A.1.8 Recommendations A.1.9 Summary	237 238 239 243 245 245 246 248
A.1.2 RAID-1 and RAID-1E	237 238 239 243 245 245 246 248 249

How to get IBM Redbooks	
List of abbreviations	261
Index	263
IBM Redbooks evaluation	267

Preface

This redbook will help you install, tailor and configure the SuSE Linux 6.2 distribution on different servers of the Netfinity class. You will be instructed on how to do the basic installation, installing and configuring different services like Apache (http-Server), Samba (Fileserver for Windows-based networks) and several other servers. Even though SuSE Linux 6.3 will already be out at the time this book will be published, most of the content still applies to SuSE Linux 6.3 as well. In fact, some things might be much easier and workarounds that were needed for 6.2 will not be necessary anymore.

Linux is a very mature and stable operation system but the Linux Kernel is constantly being updated in order to make the operating system better. This can make it difficult for Linux beginners, so be prepared for a bumpy ride and a steep learning curve. But it is worth the effort and, as they say at SuSE, don't forget to have a lot of fun...

The team that wrote this redbook

This redbook was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization Raleigh Center.



Jakob Carstensen is an Advisory Specialist for Netfinity Servers at the International Technical Support Organization, Raleigh Center. He manages residencies and produces redbooks. His most recent publication was *Linux for WebSphere and DB2 Servers*. Before joining the ITSO, he worked in Denmark both for the IBM PC Institute teaching TechConnect and Service Training courses, and for IBM PSS performing level-2 support of Netfinity products. He has a Bachelor of Electronic Engineering degree and has worked for IBM for the past nine years.



Lenz Grimmer is a Software Engineer at SuSE GmbH in Nuremberg, Germany. He belongs to the distribution development team and is responsible for a number of packages on the distribution. He has five years of experience with Linux (since Kernel 0.99.xx) and holds a degree in Computer Science from the Berufsakademie in Mannheim, Germany. Before he started working for SuSE in April 1998, he worked as a system administrator for a local Internet service provider that used Linux exclusively for its servers. His areas of expertise include setting up different Linux services such as Apache, Samba and Squid. In addition to trying to be helpful on several SuSE mailing lists, he has written the SuSE FAQ, which is available online at http://www.suse.com/Support/Doku/FAQ/

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999



Ivo Gomilsek is a Product Specialist for PC Hardware in IBM Slovenia. He is IBM Certified Professional Server Specialist, Red Hat Certified Engineer, OS/2 Warp Certified Engineer and Certified Vinca Co-StandbyServer for Windows NT Engineer. Ivo was a member of the team that wrote the redbook *Implementing Vinca Solutions on IBM Netfinity Servers*. His areas of expertise include IBM Netfinity servers, network operating systems (OS/2, Linux, Windows NT) and Lotus Domino Servers. During his career he has worked as a Systems Engineer in PSG and is now working in Product Support Services (PSS) as level-2 support for IBM Netfinity servers, and high availability solutions for IBM Netfinity servers and Linux. Ivo has been employed at IBM for three years.



Jay Haskins is a Systems Architect for IBM Global Services Enterprise Architecture and Design in Seattle, Washington. He has been a Linux and Open Source advocate for more than five years and currently spends most of his time developing dynamic monitoring tools using Perl and the Apache Web server. Before joining IBM, Jay worked in several different areas of the information technology field including UNIX system administration, database design and development, Windows application development, and network administration.



Joe Kaplenk is a Senior Systems Management Integration Professional for IBM Global Services/DAAS in Lisle, Illinois. He has 20 years of experience in the computer field. He holds a degree in Physics from the University of Utah. His areas of expertise include UNIX system administration and computer science education. He has written several books on UNIX and Linux system administration, including the *UNIX System Administrator's Interactive Workbook*, both published by Prentice-Hall, as well as contributing articles to Linux journals. He has worked with IBM for three years. He has also been teaching Computer Science part-time at the College of DuPage in Glen Ellyn, Illinois for 16 years and UNIX administration for seven years.

Thanks to the SuSE development team for their support and a great distribution.

Thanks to the following people from the International Technical Support Organization, Raleigh Center:

Diane O'Shea Gail Christensen Shawn Walsh Linda Robinson David Watts Rufus Credle

Margaret Ticknor Mike Haley Linda Robinson

Thanks to the following IBM employees:

Egan Ford, Advanced Technical Support Karl Schultz, Netfinity ServerProven Julie Briddon, Marketing Communications Bo Brun, PC Institute

Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our redbooks to be as helpful as possible. Please send us your comments about this or other redbooks in one of the following ways:

- Fax the evaluation form found in "IBM Redbooks evaluation" on page 267 to the fax number shown on the form.
- Use the online evaluation form found at http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/
- Send your comments in an Internet note to redbook@us.ibm.com

Chapter 1. Introduction



Linux, the free UNIX-like operating system that was originally invented by Linus Torvalds, is gaining more and more popularity these days. Its unmatched stability along with the availability of the full source code and its broad range of supported hardware make it a viable alternative as a server operating system in all areas of today's IT environments.

Actually, the term "Linux" comprises the core of the operating system, the kernel, and its device drivers. However, the kernel itself is not very useful without some helper programs. The collection of the Linux kernel with tools and applications is called a distribution. There are quite a number of Linux distributions available, each of them with its unique features and properties.

This redbook describes the installation of the SuSE Linux 6.2 distribution on IBM Netfinity servers in different configurations. Moreover, it discusses how to install and configure some of the most popular services and gives various tuning and configuration tips.

SuSE Linux 6.2 is the latest Linux distribution produced by SuSE GmbH, a Germany-based Linux distributor. The cardboard box consists of six CD-ROMs containing more than 1300 applications and utilities, a 400+ page manual, and 60 days of free installation support by e-mail or telephone.

With about 180 employees and over 50,000 business customers around the world, SuSE (http://www.suse.de/en/) is one of the leading Linux distributors worldwide. SuSE was founded in 1992 and started distributing Linux in early 1993. Apart from its flagship product, SuSE Linux, SuSE also offers a broad range of products and services in the Linux domain. In addition to providing professional support for business customers, SuSE also offers personal training courses and workshops.

SuSE recently founded the SuSE Labs - a global collaboration of developers that promote the development of free software projects, such as ALSA (Advanced Linux Sound Architecture), KDE (KDE Desktop Environment), XFree86 and USB-support for the Linux kernel. The SuSE developers also contribute to the development of the Linux kernel itself, to the GNU C-Library glibc and numerous other free software projects.

In addition to providing code and enhancements to the Linux community, SuSE also supports several Linux standardization efforts, such as the Linux Standard Base (LSB, found at http://www.linuxbase.org), The Linux Professional Institute (LPI,found at http://www.lpi.org) and The Linux Internationalization Initiative (Li18nux, found at http://www.li18nux.org/).

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

Besides its German branch offices in Frankfurt, Hamburg, Munich and Stuttgart, SuSE also has international subsidiaries in Oakland, California (http://www.suse.com), Prague in the Czech Republic and Borehamwood/London in the UK, which provide marketing, distribution and technical support for these countries.

Chapter 2. Linux installation

This chapter discusses the basic installation of SuSE Linux 6.2 on different models of IBM Netfinity servers and how to work around common problems. Since it is almost impossible to cover all hardware combinations, we have concentrated on typical configurations, which are representative examples:

- IBM Netfinity 3000
- IBM Netfinity 3500 M10
- IBM Netfinity 5000 with ServeRAID controller
- IBM Netfinity 5500 with ServeRAID controller
- IBM Netfinity 5600 with ServeRAID controller
- IBM Netfinity 7000 with ServeRAID controller
- IBM Netfinity 8500 with ServeRAID controller

We strongly recommend that you also have a look at the extensive SuSE manual, which covers the installation process in more detail and more variations than we will describe it here. It also gives you a lot of background information to begin with. Before you start the installation, make sure that you check the SuSE web site for updates and bug fixes. Linux is a fast-moving target, and the development is a continously ongoing process. There might be new boot floppy images or kernel patches that contain newer drivers. Also make sure that you add all security fixes if you plan to connect your machine to the Internet. Updates and bug fixes for SuSE Linux 6.2 can be found at:

http://www.suse.de/en/support/download/updates/62_update.html

The updates are located on the SuSE FTP server at the following address:

ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/suse/i386/updates/6.2/

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999



Although this chapter covers the installation of SuSE Linux 6.2, most of this still applies to SuSE Linux 6.3 as well. At the time of this writing, SuSE Linux 6.3 was still in beta phase and it was too early to base this book on this version. SuSE Linux 6.3 now offers a graphical installation program to ease the basic installation for the unexperienced user. However, you can still use the text-based installation program described in this chapter by booting from the second CD-ROM instead of the first one. In fact, using the traditional installation routine is recommended, if you want to set up a server system and want to have some more control and flexibility over your installation process. A SuSE Linux 6.3 installation might be slightly different in some options. For example, it will offer an additional installation target by using a logical volume manager (LVM).

However, this chapter should still be a helpful aid for this task. Please refer the the SuSE Linux 6.3 Installation Manual, if you run into any problems resulting of differences to this chapter.

2.1 Hardware considerations

Note

Before installing SuSE Linux, it is helpful to know the hardware components in the computer that will be used for the installation. SuSE Linux is capable of detecting most of these components correctly. However, you should still try to gather information about the following components of your machine:

- SCSI adapter manufacturer and model number
- Hard drives interface type (SCSI or IDE) and size
- **CD-ROM** interface type (SCSI or IDE)
- Display Adapter manufacturer, model and video memory size
- Mouse mouse type and connector type
- Network card manufacturer and model
- RAM the amount of RAM in your system
- CPU the type and number of processors
- **Monitor** manufacturer and model, horizontal and vertical frequency range
- 4 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

A very helpful resource for information about IBM Netfinity servers and other IBM products including monitors and SCSI adapters can be found on the following site:

ftp://ftp.pc.ibm.com/pcicrse/psref

This archive contains Personal Systems Reference sheets (PSREF) for all IBM PC products, current and withdrawn. You can also get a lot of useful information about IBM hardware at the following Web sites:

```
http://www.pc.ibm.com/support/
http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/netfinity/tech library.html
```

SuSE also maintains an online database of supported hardware for Linux, which is available at:

```
http://cdb.suse.de/cdb_english.html
```

In addition to that, SuSE certifies IBM Netfinity systems for compatibility with SuSE Linux and is in close contact with the developers at IBM.

Keylabs is also running a Linux hardware certification program, which lists IBM products as well:

http://www.keylabs.com/linux/linux_results.html

2.2 Making the CD-ROM bootable

If you plan on booting the system directly from the CD-ROM, make sure the CD-ROM drive is the initial boot device prior to the installation. This can be accomplished by following the ensuing steps:

- 1. Power on the server.
- 2. When you see the IBM logo press F1 to enter the setup utility.
- 3. From the setup utility select Start Options.
- 4. From the Start Options select Startup Sequence.
- 5. Make sure that your CD-ROM is the initial boot device.
- 6. Press Esc until you see the setup utility main screen and select **Save Settings**.
- 7. Press Enter to confirm saving the current settings.
- 8. Exit the setup utility.



Making the CD-ROM bootable can also be done by loading the default settings from the setup utility, but be aware that all other settings will be set to default as well.

2.3 Basic Linux installation

Note

We will begin with the installation procedure on an IBM Netfinity without ServeRAID controller. Most of the following steps are identical to the procedure for installing on a system equipped with the ServeRAID interface. 2.4, "Installation with ServeRAID" on page 40 explains the differences.

SuSE Linux already contains all the necessary drivers, so you can start the installation by booting directly from the first CD-ROM. The installation will not be different from on any other regular PC. The only obstacle is the onboard S3 video chipset on some models, which is not very well supported by the version of XFree86 that is included on the CD-ROM (the driver first appeared with XFree86 3.3.4). The X Server tends to crash the machine with certain modelines (resolutions). See 2.5, "XFree86 configuration" on page 44 for more information.

The installation workflow of SuSE Linux is illustrated in Figure 1.

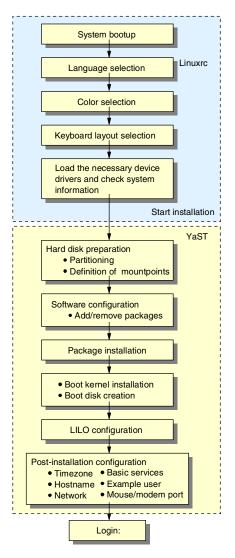


Figure 1. SuSE Linux installation workflow

The installation process is performed by two programs. Stage 1, the initial bootup process and the loading of driver modules, is fulfilled by Linuxrc, which can be loaded from either floppy disk or the CD-ROM. Linuxrc will then start YaST (Yet another Setup Tool) to perform tasks like partitioning, definition of mount points and installing the software packages. YaST can either be loaded from a local installation medium like the CD-ROM or the hard disk, or it can be loaded over the network to do a network installation. After

YaST has finished its job, it will boot directly into the freshly installed system. However, YaST will not only be used for the initial installation. You can use it for system administration and package management later on. Start it by typing "yast" as the root user. See Chapter 3, "Basic system administration" on page 51 for details.

2.3.1 Booting the installation system

Insert the first SuSE Linux 6.2 CD-ROM in your CD-ROM drive (and the boot floppy disk, if booting from CD-ROM is not supported) and reboot or power up the system. After a short moment you should see the bootup splash screen shown in Figure 2. If this fails, make sure that the PC is really configured for booting from CD-ROM or Floppy!

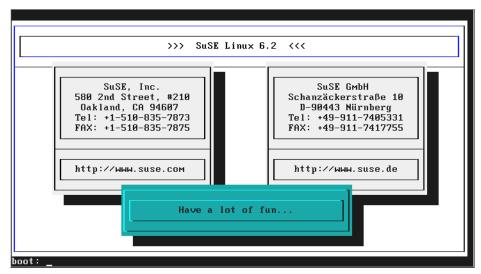


Figure 2. SuSE Linux bootup splash screen

The boot prompt enables you to enter special boot parameters. This may be necessary, if the system does not recognize certain hardware components. Section 2.7.6, "Kernel parameters" in the SuSE manual gives you more information about this feature. We did not experience any problems with IBM Netfinity hardware; therefore, you should not need this.

The installation system will automatically continue the boot process after a few seconds. If you press Enter, it will boot up immediately.

YaST will	Please choose a keyboard map. offer you additional keyboard tabl	es later on.
	Deutsch English (US) English (UK) Español Français Hellenic Italiano Magyar	

Figure 3. Language selection screen

First you have to select your desired language. This is the language that will be used during the installation process. Use the Up/Down cursor keys to highlight your selection and click **Ok** to continue.

>>>	Linuxrc v0.91 (Kernel 2.2.10) (c) 1996-99 SuSE GmbH <<<
	What kind of display do you use?
	Color display Monochrome display
	Back

Figure 4. Color selection screen

Select what kind of display you will use. We recommend you select **Color display**, since this is what most modern PCs presently use.

>>> Linuxrc v0.91 (Kernel 2.2.10) (c) 1996-99 SuSE GmbH <<<	
 Please choose a keyboard map. YaST will offer you additional keyboard tables later on.	
Deutsch English (US) English (UK) Español Français Hellenic Italiano Magyar	
Ok Back	

Figure 5. Keyboard selection window

Now you have to select the required layout for your keyboard. Click **Ok** to advance to the Linuxrc main menu.

Main menu
Settings System information Kernel modules (hardware drivers) Start installation / system End / Reboot
Ok Back

Figure 6. Linuxrc - main menu

Figure 6 shows the Linuxrc main menu. It offers the following options:

Settings - This option enables you to modify the language, screen or keyboard settings, if you need to revise the selection you made during the bootup process.

System information - This menu option gives you detailed information about the hardware that has already been recognized.

Kernel modules (Hardware drivers) - Use this menu to load device drivers for special SCSI devices, network cards and other devices.

Start installation / System - After you have loaded the necessary device drivers, select this option to continue the installation.

End / Reboot - This aborts the installation and reboots the system.

Before you can start the installation, you should make sure that the system detected your hard disk(s) and CD-ROM drive. If you intend to make a network installation or if you want to use a network connection later on, you should also load the respective network driver. Select **System Information** > **Harddisks / CD-ROMs** to determine which devices have been detected. Devices that are connected to the Adaptec SCSI Hostadapter, which is used in most IBM Netfinity servers, should already show up in this list. Return to the main menu and select **Kernel modules (hardware drivers)** to load the network and additional SCSI drivers.

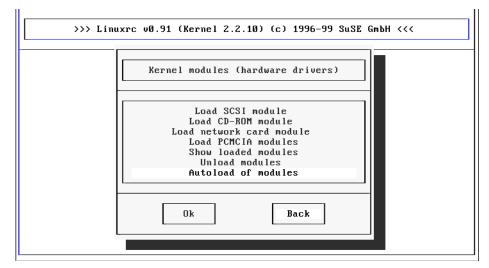


Figure 7. Hardware driver selection window

Select **Load network card module** to load the network card driver. You can also select **Autoload of modules** to let the system try to automatically probe for additional devices. However, this may freeze the machine or will not detect all components. This is especially true for the IBM ServeRAID driver - autoprobing this module will freeze the machine. Do this only if you absolutely do not know what kind of hardware you have.

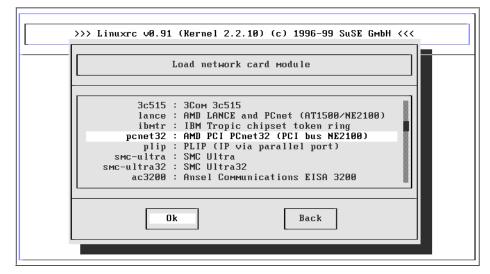


Figure 8. Network module selection window

Load the network card module that fits your network card. Select **eepro100** if you have an Intel network card, or select the **pcnet32** driver from the separate modules disk if your PC uses a card with the AMD chipset. Before loading the driver, you can again pass parameters to it (for example, interrupt and I/O address). This is not necessary for most modern PCI cards; you can just click **Ok** here. Linuxrc will now attempt to load the kernel module and informs you of the success or failure including the output of the device driver startup. This procedure may take a while with some drivers, so please be patient if the system does not react immediately.

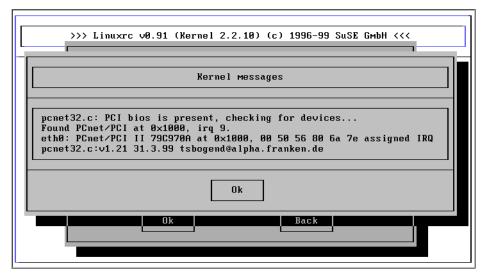


Figure 9. Network driver debug messages

After loading all necessary drivers, select **Back** to return to the Linuxrc main menu shown in Figure 6 on page 10. Select **Start installation / system** to begin the installation.

2.3.2 Starting the installation

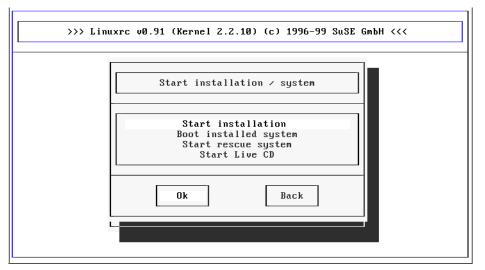


Figure 10. Linuxrc: start installation

This is an explanation of Figure 10:

Start installation to begin a regular installation.

Boot installed system comes in handy, if an already installed system fails to boot from the hard disk and you do not have a special boot disk.

Start rescue system enables you to start a minmal Linux system in a RAM disk, which you can use to do system maintenance or repair a corrupted installation.

Start Live CD enables you to run a full-fledged Linux system (including XFree86, KDE and compilers) directly from CD-ROM without installing Linux on your hard drive. You need to have the special Live-CD-ROM to do this, which is a separate product and is no longer included in the SuSE Linux box.

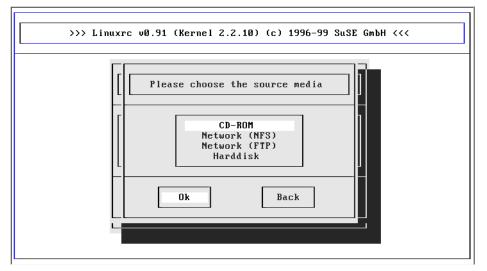


Figure 11. Selection of the installation medium

Please choose your source medium here. In our case, select **CD-ROM**. YaST will now be loaded and started to continue the installation. You can also set up a file server that serves the installation CD-ROMs over the network using NFS or FTP. However, this is beyond the scope of this manual and will not be discussed. Please see the SuSE manual for further details about this.

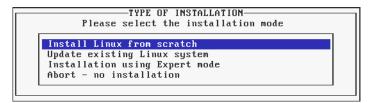


Figure 12. Type of selection

Select **Install Linux from scratch** to advance to the next section. If you intend to update an existing SuSE Linux, use **Update existing Linux system** here. Do not try to update distibutions other than SuSE Linux with this feature! This can cause severe chaos in your installation. Choosing **Installation using Expert mode** gives you some more control over the installation process, but will not be discussed here.

2.3.3 Partitioning and creation of filesystems

In order to be able to install Linux on your hard drive, you need to have some free space on your hard disk. This free space has to be divided among several partitions. Similar to fdisk in MS-DOS/Windows, SuSE Linux provides a tool to create the partitions and define their size and the partition type. After you have created the partitions, filesystems have to be created on them (they need to be formatted) so that Linux can access them. Linux does not know about drive letters like A:, C: or D:. Everything lives below a single directory tree (the root directory). Filesystems on other partitions will be mounted to a subdirectory of the root directory. You will also have to define these mountpoints when creating the file systems on your partitions.

Devices also use a different naming scheme from the Microsoft operating systems. Instead of using the above-mentioned drive letters, all drives in Linux are named alphabetically. Each partition on this drive has another number (CD-ROMs do not have partitions). For example:

- /dev/hda is the first IDE drive (master on the first IDE channel).
- /dev/hdc would be the first IDE drive on the second IDE channel.
- /dev/hdb1 is the first primary partition on the slave drive of the first IDE channel.
- /dev/sda names the first SCSI hard disk.
- /dev/sdb5 names the first logical partition on the second SCSI disk.

For more information about devices, see Appendix D1, "Device files in the /dev directory" in the SuSE manual.



Note -

Even though the partitioning tool is capable of creating partitions for MS-DOS or Windows, you should not use it for creating partitions for operating systems other than Linux. Please use the fdisk that ships with MS-DOS/Windows to create such partitions.

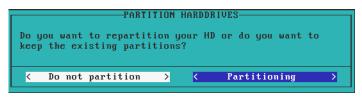


Figure 13. Selection: Hard drive partitioning

At first you will be prompted if you want to create partitions on your hard disk(s). Select **Partitioning**, if you have not defined any partitions for Linux yet. If you want to keep previously defined partitions, choose **Do not partition** here.

USE ENTIRE DISK A disk was found in your system. You may partition this drive manually or just use the whole disk for your Linux installation.
C Partitioning > KWhole hard disk>

Figure 14. Selection: partitioning method

If you have multiple hard disks, you will be prompted to select the drive you want to use for the partitioning. You will then return to this screen, after you have created partitions on one of these to be able to partition the other disks as well. Linux can be spread over multiple disk drives without problems.

If you choose **Whole hard disk** here, YaST will automatically partition the selected disk for you by creating one swap partition, a small partition for the /boot directory and one large partition for the root directory and all its subdirectories. It will also automatically define these mount points and advance to the package installation menu shown in Figure 26 on page 24.

While automatic partitioning is fine for home or workstation use, you should consider partitioning your disks manually to better fit your needs.

EDITING THE PARTITION TABLE Fdisk detected the following hard drive geometry: Disk /dev/hda 32 Heads 63 Sectors 1015 Cylinders. One cylinder has 1032192 Bytes.
Here you can see the error messages of the fdisk program:
Current partition table of the selected hard disk:
Device name From To Blocks Partition type No partitions available
F1=Help F3=Change type F4=Delete F5=Create F6=View errors
<pre> Continue ></pre>

Figure 15. Fdisk main screen (no partitions defined)

If the current hard disk has not been used before, you will start with an empty partition table as shown in Figure 15. You can now start adding partitions with the F5 key. Use F4 to delete previously defined partitions.



- Note

Partitioning your hard disks is highly dependent on the purpose of your system. Depending on the intended services, you may need to create one especially large partition (for example for a file server). There is no general rule for this and it's almost impossible to give recommendations. See section 2.10, "Partitioning for experts" in the SuSE manual for more information about this issue.

Chapter 2. Linux installation 17

Fdisk detected Disk /dev/h One cylinde	following partition types is possible.
Here you ca Device con disklabel Building a until you Current par Device nar	Primary partition r SGI Extended partition ly, vious < Continue > < Abort >
∕dev⁄hda1	1 6 6016 83 Linux native
∕dev⁄hda2	7 137 132048 82 Linux swap
F1=Help F3	B=Change type F4=Delete F5=Create F6=View errors
	<pre> Continue ></pre>

Figure 16. Selection: partition type

Depending on the already existing partitions, you can now define the partition type. A hard disk can consist of a maximum of four primary partitions, or up to three primary and one extended partition. An extended partition can contain multiple logical partitions. See section 2.9, "Partition types on a PC" in the SuSE 6.2 manual for a detailed description of the different partition types on a PC. Linux can be installed in either partition type.

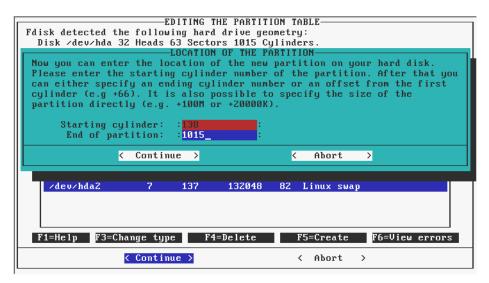


Figure 17. Selection: partition size

After defining the partition type, you now have to enter the size and location of that partition by supplying the starting and ending cylinder. By default, YaST uses the next available starting cylinder for the beginning of the new partition and the last available cylinder as the end (grow to fill). To define the size and location, you can either enter absolute cylinder numbers here, or you can use the default start cylinder and enter the size of this partition in kilobytes or megabytes (for example entering +10M would create a 10 MB partition).

Here you can see ENTER THE PARTITION TYPE Device contains Choose the type of the partition. Linux partition Linux Swap partition Building a new DOS Partition Until you decid Other partition Current partitio Other partition Vdev/hda1 7 /dev/hda2 7 132048 83 Linux native		EDITING THE PARTITION TABLE following hard drive geometry: Heads 63 Sectors 1015 Cylinders. 1032192 Bytes.
disklabel Building a new until you decid Current partition Device name /dev/hda1	Here you can see	
	disklabel Building a new until you decid Current partitio	Linux Swap partition DOS Partition Other partition
		7 137 132048 83 Linux native
F1=Help F3=Change F4=Delete F5=Create F6=View errors < Continue > < Abort >		nge type F4=Delete F5=Create F6=View errors

Figure 18. Selection: Linux Swap partition

By default, YaST creates Linux native partitions. To create partitions of another type (for example Swap), press F3 after you have selected the desired partition you want to change. Note that this procedure only sets the partition ID of this partition. It does not modify the partition's content or size. Partition the drive(s) to suit your needs.

	——————————————————————————————————————	DITING 1	THE PARTIT	ION T	ABLE			
disk detected th	ne follow:	ing hard	d drive ge	ometr	чų :			
Disk zdevzhda 3								
One cylinder ha	us 1032192	2 Butes.						
Here you can se	e the eri	ror mess	sages of t	he fd	lisk pro	ogram:		
			5			5		
Device contair	ns neithei	r a vali	id DOS par	titio	n table	e, nor	Sun or	SGI
disklabel			1			-		
Building a new	u DOS disl	klahel.	Channes w	ill r	emain	in memo	nru onlu	n. 📳
until you deci								
aneri goa acer		ICC CHCP	4. HI CCI C.		or cour	30, 0	ic prov	
		0 11			1 . 1 .			
Current partiti								
Current partiti Device name						type		
Device name	From	To	Blocks	Par	tition			
Device [®] name _/dev/hda1	From 1	To 6	Blocks 6016	Par 83	tition Linux	native	;	
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2	From 1 7	To 6 137	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap	-	
Device [®] name _/dev/hda1	From 1 7	To 6	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux	native swap	-	
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2	From 1 7	To 6 137	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap	-	
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2	From 1 7	To 6 137	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap	-	
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2 /dev/hda3	From 1 7 138	To 6 137 1015	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap	à.	
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2 /dev/hda3	From 1 7	To 6 137 1015	Blocks 6016 132048	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap	à.	w errors
Device name /dev/hda1 /dev/hda2 /dev/hda3	From 1 7 138	To 6 137 1015 e F4	Blocks 6016 132048 885024	Par 83 82	tition Linux Linux	native swap native	à.	w errors

Figure 19. Final partition table layout

After the partition table is finished, click **Continue** to write the partition table to disk and proceed to the filesystem creation dialog.

EDITING THE PARTITION TABLE Fdisk detected the following hard drive geometry: Disk /dev/hda 32 Heads 63 Sectors 1015 Cylinders. One cylinder has 1032192 Bytes. Here you can see the error messages of the fdisk program:					
Device contains neither a valid DOS partition table, nor Sun or SGI disklabel Building a until you Current par Device na					
/dev/hda1					
<mark>∕dev/hda2</mark> ∕dev/hda3 138 1015 885024 83 Linux native					
F1=Help F3=Change type F4=Delete F6=View errors					
<pre> Continue ></pre>					

Figure 20. Writing the partition table

Click **Yes** if you want to write the new partition table to this disk. Selecting **No** will abort the partitioning.

Disk /dev	EDITING THE PARTITION TABLE ted the following hard drive geometry: whda 32 Heads 63 Sectors 1015 Cylinders. der has 1032192 Bytes.
Here you Device disklab Buildin until y Current Device /dev/h	
∕dev∕h	<pre></pre>
F1=Help	F3=Change type F4=Delete F5=Create F6=View errors
	<pre>< Continue > < Abort ></pre>

Figure 21. Adding swap space

If you have created a swap partition, YaST will immediately attempt to use it to have more virtual memory for the further installation procedure. Select **Continue** to make use of this. The content of this partition will be deleted!

Current list o		EATING FILESYS		
	Blocks Inodes			
∠dev/hda3	885024 4096 1			Linux
∕dev⁄hda1	6016 2048 M	Normal ext2		Linux
F1=Help F4=M	ount point F5=	=Inode densit	F6=Format	F7=Read fstab
	< Continue >		< Abort	>
				-

Figure 22. Filesystem creation

After the partition table has been written, you need to create filesystems on all partitions that you want to use for Linux (this is similar to formatting them).

Additionally you have to define mount points, which partition will act as your root filesystem, and where other partitions should be mounted to. Press F4 to open the mount point dialog.

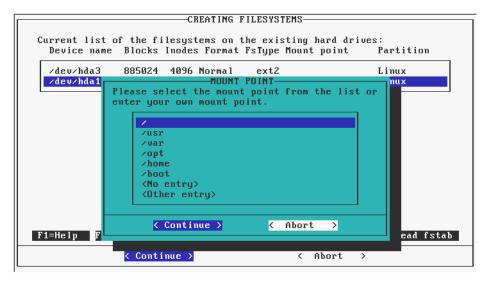


Figure 23. Selection of mount points

YaST offers a list of commonly used mount points. You can either select one of the list or select **Other entry** to freely define another mount point.



Note

One of your partitions must to be mounted to "/". This will be your root partition. YaST will check for the existence of this mount point before you can proceed.

Current list o Device name		tems on t		ng hard dri	
<mark>∕dev∕hda1</mark> ∕dev∕hda3	6016 2048 885024 4096		ext2 >b ext2	oot	Linux Linux
F1=Help F4=M	for Do Nor For K Co	the parti n ot forma mal forma mat and c	rmat metho tion. t t		F7=Read fstab
	< Continue >			< Abort	>

Figure 24. Format mode

After the definition of mount points and the type of formatting, select **Continue** to proceed to the actual creation of these filesystems. *This is the same as formatting your hard disk! You will not be able to recover any data that has not been backed up yet!* If you are sure, that you want to proceed, select **Yes**.

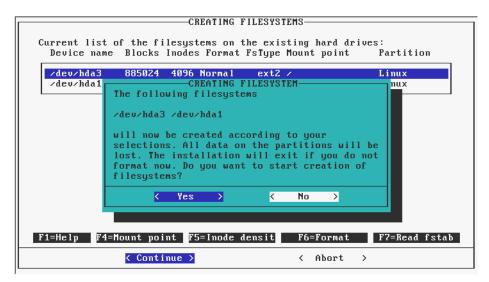


Figure 25. Confirmation to create the filesystems

The creation of file systems may take some time, depending on the size of your partitions. You should note some hard disk activity during this process.

After the filesystems have been successfully created, you will reach YaST's package selection screen.

2.3.4 Software package selection and installation

Installation	YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH
Logfile: /mnt/var/	adm/inst-log/installation-991004-0
Reading description Base system: unknow Source media: SuSE- 2710 packages on in Analyzing dependenc Looking for already Ø packages are inst Reading DU-files New configuration: default (/usr/lib language.english Added new configura	Load configuration Save configuration Change/create configuration Check dependencies of packages What if Start installation Index of all series and packages Package information Install packages Delete packages Main menu
F1=Help	TAB=Installation log window ESC=Main menu

Figure 26. YaST: Package selection

After you have finished the creation of partitions and filesystems, the installation program needs to know which software you want to install. Since SuSE Linux offers a broad variety of software packages, it would be a very time consuming task to check each single package for installation.

The window shown in Figure 26 enables you to define the software packages that will be installed on your system. You will be able to add or remove packages later on; therefore ,we will stick with the default configuration here. SuSE also created a number of predefined package selections (configurations), which you can choose with the menu option **Load configuration**.

More information about package management can be found in 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51.

The only package that we will be adding here is the correct driver for the video card, also referred to as the X server.

Select Change/create configuration

	s selection		YaST	Version	1.01	- (c) 1	994-99	SuSE	GmbH
Serie snd spl tcl tex x x3d xap xdeu xsru xum zq	Sound related s Spell checking Tcl/Tk/TclX, Tc TeX/LaTeX and a Base X Window S 3D stuff for X1 X Applications Development und Several X Serve XView (OpenLook Window Manager Source packages	utilities 1-Language pplication ystem - XF 1 and cons er X11 rs (XFree8 , Applicat and Deskto	and Tk- s ree86\tm ole <u>6\tm 3.3</u> ions)	Toolkit				10.2 16.5 362.4 29.4 10.9 31.9 22.2 2.0 8.9	5 M] 4 K] 4 M] 9 M] 9 M]
/dev/ha	-name partition la3 Linux	836.2 M	used f 620.5 M 320.0 k	215.6			•		
	F1=Help F	4=Resortin	g F5=D	ependen	cies l	F10=Esc	=Exit		

Figure 27. YaST: Series selection

Figure 26 show the series selection of YaST. All software packages have been categorized into different series, to make it easier to find the correct program for your needs.

Select xsrv to open the list of available X servers.

Package sele	ction - Series xsrv YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH			
[] xi740 [] xmach32 [] xmach64 [] xmach64 [] xmach6 [] xmono [] xp9k [] xriva3d [] xriush [] xs3 [] xs3u [] xs3u [] xsis [X] xsuga [X] xuga16 [] xw32	XBF server for i740 based cards Mount point Mach32 Server Free Mach64 Server 212.3 N Mach8 server 212.3 N X-monochrome server Accelerated server for P9000-based cards			
Version: 3.3.4-7 Package Size: installed 3.4 M (compressed 1.3 M) If you don't have a SVGA card installed you shouldn't install this server. Please check the handbook on details about the chipsets supported. F1=Help F2=Description F5=Dependencies F10=Ok Esc=Abort				

Figure 28. YaST: Package selection

After you have selected a series, you will see a list of all packages available in this series. Select **xsvga**. F2 will give you a more detailed description of the current package. To confirm you selection, press F10 to return to the package series selection menu. You can now select or deselect packages from other series or press F10 to continue.

Now the selection is finished and you can start the actual installation of the selected packages by choosing **Start installation**.

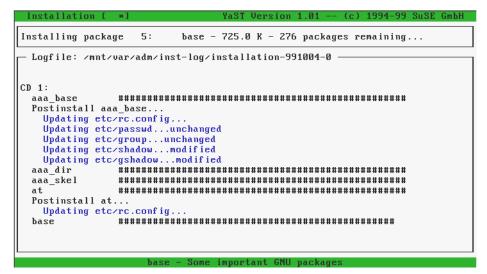


Figure 29. YaST: Package installation in progress

Now the installation of software packages from the CD-ROM to your hard disk is being performed. Depending on the speed of your CD-ROM and the number of packages, this may take a while. You will be prompted to change the CD-ROM from time to time, to install the remaining packages.

installing pac	ckage 191: xshared – 2.0 M – 90 packages remaining
- Logfile: ∕mi	nt/var/adm/inst-log/installation-991004-0
tcl_new	***************************************
tix	***************************************
tk	***************************************
tk_new	INSERT CD
ifnteuro	
intlfnts	Please make sure that CD number 2 is in your
xaw3d	drive!
xdmbgrd	til som en state i stat
xf86	
xfnt100	<pre> Continue ></pre>
xfntbig	
xfntscl	#
xfsetup	***************************************
xman -	***************************************
xpm	***************************************
xshared	***************************************

Figure 30. YaST: CD changing prompt

After the installation of packages has been finished, YaST will return to the package installation menu shown in Figure 26 on page 24. You are free to add or remove further software packages and reiterate through this process. To continue the installation of SuSE Linux, select **Main menu**.

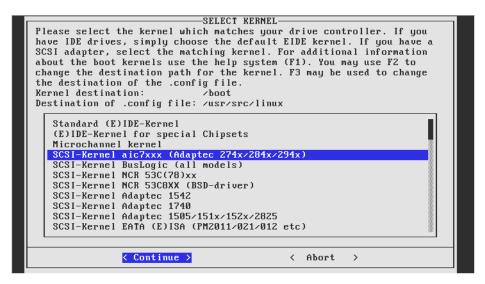


Figure 31. YaST: Kernel selection

In order to be able to boot the installed system from hard disk, you need to install a Linux kernel that includes support for your SCSI adapter. If your system uses the Adaptec SCSI controller, select **SCSI Kernel aic7xxx** here.



Figure 32. YaST: Bootdisk creation

You now have the possibility to create a boot disk with the previously selected kernel image. We recommend you select **No** here, because you can also use the installation floppy or the first CD-ROM to boot the system in case of an accident.

You will now be prompted if you want to configure LILO, the Linux Loader. Select **Yes**.

2.3.5 LILO - the Linux Loader

LILO INST	ALLATION				
LILO (the Linux Loader) allows you to boot Linux from a hard disk. To configure LILO, fill in the following fields. Then, create and/or edit your boot configurations. The first boot configuration will be booted automatically after the boot delay. You must create at least one boot configuration (using F4). After that, you can commit your configuration by pressing <continue> and LILO will be installed.</continue>					
Append-line for hardware parameter	:				
Where do you want to install LILO	[Master boot record]				
Boot delay : <mark>2</mark> :	[] 'linear' option				
The following boot configurations are currently available	Linux				
F1=Help F4=New Config	F5=Edit Config F6=Delete Config				
< Continue >	< Abort >				

Figure 33. YaST: LILO configuration

LILO, the Linux Loader, is a boot manager that allows you to boot multiple operating systems that can reside on different hard disk partitions or even on different hard disks. Even if you do only have Linux installed, you still need to create a boot configuration for Linux. Linux cannot be booted without LILO.

For an exhaustive explanation of LILO and boot concepts, see Chapter 4, "Booting and boot managers: LILO, loadlin, etc." in the SuSE manual.

Figure 33 shows YaST's LILO main configuration window. You can stick with these default values. However, you might want to decrease the Boot delay from 10 seconds (default) to a lower value to save some time during the system startup. By default, LILO will be written to the master boot record of your primary hard disk. Alternatively you can write it to a floppy disk, which has to be inserted during the system bootup.

Press F4 to create a new boot configuration.

	LILO INSTA	LIATION				
LILO Installation LILO (the Linux Loader) allows you to boot Linux from a hard disk. To						
confiLILO BOOT CONFIGURATION your						
boot	Please enter a label, or name, for this boot configuration,					
autom	······································					
confi						
press						
	you must also specify the locati	on of the boot kernel.				
Appen	Configuration name	:Linux :				
"ppc"	configuration name	· u thux				
Where	Which operating system	[Boot Linux]	1 1			
Boot	(Root-) partition to boot	:/dev/sda3 :				
The f		[] Kernel optional				
are c	Kernel to be booted by LILO	:/boot/vmlinuz				
	herner to be booted by hind					
	F1=Help F3=Selection					
	< Continue >	< Abort >				
		< Abort >				

Figure 34. YaST: Create LILO boot configuration

Figure 34 shows the boot configuration dialog. You need to create such a configuration for each operating system you want to boot.

Enter Linux as the configuration name. This name identifies your boot configuration and it must be unique for each configuration you create. If you want to boot an operating system later on, you have to enter this name at the LILO: prompt.

In the Which operating system field, enter Boot Linux. Choose the correct value if you want to boot another operating system.

In the (Root-) partition to boot field, enter /dev/sda3, where 3 is the partition number. You have to select your root-partition here (the partition that is mounted to /) - not the Boot-Partition! Usually this is already correctly preselected.

In the Kernel to be booted by LILO field, enter $\mbox{/vmlinuz}$. LILO needs to know where the kernel image to be booted is located.

Highlight **Continue** using the Tab key to create this new boot configuration. When you have added all necessary boot configurations, select **Continue** in the LILO main menu to write the new boot record.

	LILO INSTALLATION				
LILO (the	LILO (the Linux Loader) allows you to boot Linux from a hard disk. To				
	ELILO, fill in the following fields. Then, create and/or edit your				
	igurations. The first boot configuration will be booted				
	cally after the boot delay. You must create at least one boot				
configura	tion (using F4). After that, you can commit your configuration by				
pressing	<continue> and LILO will be installed.</continue>				
	CONFIBMATION				
	Here is the output of the LILO command. You have to				
Append-1					
ubbeur-1					
	result or not. In the latter case, you should repeat the				
Where do	configuration.				
Boot del	Added Linux *				
	<pre>< Continue > < Repeat ></pre>				
The foll					
are curre					
	* 11				
F1=	Help F4=New Config F5=Edit Config F6=Delete Config				
	<pre>< Continue > < Abort ></pre>				

Figure 35. YaST: LILO output

After LILO has performed the creation of the new boot block, you have the possibility to review LILO's output. Click **Continue** to proceed to the time zone and clock settings.

2.3.6 Time zone and clock settings

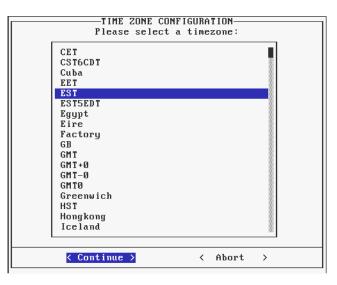


Figure 36. YaST: time zone configuration

Select your desired time zone here. This is important for automatic switching between summer or winter time. You can also change this value later on, which is helpful if you use your Linux system in different locations (for example on a laptop computer).

	HARDWARE CLOCK m time of your computer Time) or is it set to				
<pre> GMT > < Local time > </pre>					

Figure 37. YaST: system clock selection

Now the setting of your BIOS clock has to be selected. Click **Local time** if you are booting other operating systems on this box, or **GMT** otherwise.

2.3.7 Network configuration

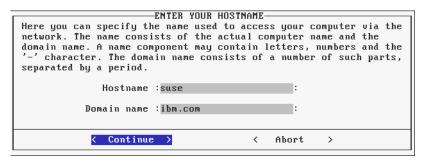


Figure 38. YaST: host name configuration

Enter your host and domain name here. Each host in a TCP/IP network must have a unique host name. If you do not know this, please ask the network administrator of your local network for assistance. If you do not intend to use this system in a networked environment, you can freely choose your host and domain name.

CONFIRMATION If you want to use TCP/IP only in loopback mode (e.g. if you do not have a network card), your IP address will be 127.0.0.1 and we will skip most of the questions. Do you want to use TCP/IP in loopback mode only?
K Loopback only > K Real network >

Figure 39. YaST: network type selection

If your system will be connected to a LAN, select **Real network**.

Otherwise, select **Loopback only**. This will skip the following questions and continues with the Sendmail configuration shown in Figure 42 on page 35.

For DHCP client selection, select **No**, if you will use a static IP address for the network card (which is recommended for a server). If you select **Yes** here, the system will act as a DHCP client in your network and will obtain its IP address from a DHCP server in your local network. In this case, the dialog shown in Figure 40 will not appear.

ENTER THE NETWORK ADDRESSES					
Please enter the data required for the configuration of your					
network. These are the IP address you want					
currently being installed (e.g. 192.168.17.					
your network. The latter is 255.255.255.0 f	or most of the (smaller)				
networks, but you may wish to set it to a d	ifferent value. If you				
need a gateway to access the NFS server, pl					
address of the gateway host.					
Type of network:	[eth0]]				
IP address of your machine:	:192.168.0.99 :				
Netmask (usually 255.255.255.0):	:255.255.255.0 :				
Default gateway address (if required):	:192.168.0.1 :				
IP address of the Point-to-Point partner	: :				
If address of the forme to forme partner					
< Continue > <	Abort >				

Figure 40. YaST: network configuration

The window shown in Figure 40 enables you to configure your TCP/IP configuration. You need an IP address to be able to communicate with other hosts in your network. Please ask your network administrator for the correct values for your network.

Type of network - select the desired network card here. Select **eth0** to use the first Ethernet card, **tr0** if you use a token-ring adapter.

Enter the correspondent values for your local network and click Continue.

You will now be prompted if you want to start the inetd service. Inetd is needed for invoking certain services on demand, such as telnet, finger, ftp and others. Inetd should always be started; otherwise, the above-mentioned services will not be available. If your system will be connected to the Internet, you may want to restrict access to certain services. Please see section

18.2.2, "inetd" in the SuSE manual for more info about inetd. In most cases it is safe to select **Yes** here.

If you want to use this system as an NFS or NIS server, you will need to start the portmapper service at boot-up. Therefore, the question "START THE PORTMAPPER?" should be answered with **Yes**.

If you have decided to start the portmapper, you will now be prompted, if you want to start the NFS server as well. Select **Yes** if you plan to share files using NFS.

The ADJUST NEWS FROM-ADDRESS dialog enables you to modify the sender address, if you intend to use Usenet News. The default is fine here for most cases; select **Continue** to proceed.

If your system is connected to a network and you would like to access a Domain Name System (DNS) server, select **Yes** at the CONFIRMATION (nameserver) dialog. If your system will act as the DNS, select **Yes**, too.

NAMESEVER CONFIG	GURATION	
Please enter the IP address of your more domain name servers by modify /etc/resolv.conf.	r name server. You	can add
IP-address list		
:192.168.0.2		:
Domain list		
:ibm.com		:
< Continue >	< Abort >	

Figure 41. YaST: nameserver configuration

Figure 41 shows the name server configuration dialog. You can enter your name server's IP address on the first line. If you want to access multiple name servers, separate the entries with blanks. Adjust the domain list to your local domain.

If you want to run a DNS server on this system, you still have to configure the system to query the local running name server. Select the loopback interface (127.0.0.1) as the name server's IP address.

Choose **Continue** to advance to the next window.

SENDMAIL CONFIGURATION				
Sendmail needs an configuration file (/etc/sendmail.cf) .				
You will probably find one of the configurations below suits your				
needs.				
If you have special requirements that these do not cover, you may create you own. Please have a look at /usr/share/sendmail, one of				
the pre-existing configurations may well fit your requirements.				
ATTENTION: If you plan to install your own modified sendmail.cf				
you should select the last item in the list and install the file				
yourself. Otherwise, SuSEconfig will copy the selected file to				
sendmail.cf and your changes get lost.				
schamarr.er and your changes get rost.				
Host with permanent network connection (SMTP).				
Single user machine without network connection				
Host with temporarily network connection (Modem or ISDN).				
Use UUCP to send mail				
Do not install /etc/sendmail.cf				
DU HUL HISTAIL / CLC/SCHAMAIL.CI				
<pre> Continue ></pre>				

Figure 42. YaST: Sendmail configuration selection

You will now be asked how you want to install the Sendmail service. The default selection is good for most configurations. Press **Continue** after you have made your choice.

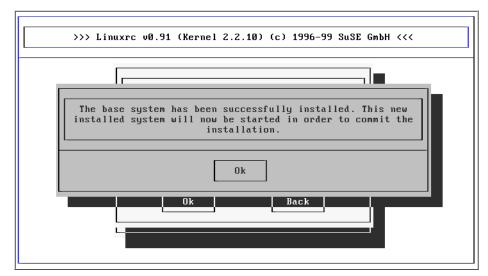


Figure 43. Finish of the package installation

After you have entered all the necessary values, the system will now be booted up.

Mounting local file systems			
proc on /proc type proc (rw)			
/dev/hdb1 on /usr type ext2 (rw)			
/dev/hda1 on /boot type ext2 (rw)	done		
Setting up /etc/ld.so.cache	done		
Setting up timezone data	done		
Setting up loopback device	done		
Setting up hostname	done		
Setting up the CMOS clock	done		
Running /sbin/init.d/boot.local	done		
Creating /var/log/boot.msg	done		
Disabling IP forwarding	done		
Starting syslog services	done		
Welcome to SuSE Linux			
You should set a password for root first. If you don't want a			
password for root, simply hit enter. New password:			

Figure 44. Definition of the root password

The installation program will now start to boot up from the freshly installed system. Since Linux is a multi-user operating system, you have to define user accounts first. The most important user account is the root account, which identifies the system administrator (username "root") of this system. Each user account is protected by a password. Therefore you will now be prompted to enter a password for the root user twice. Please note that passwords in Linux are case-sensitive!

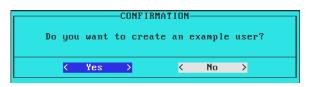


Figure 45. Confirmation: example user

After defining the root password, you will be asked if you would like to create a sample user account. We strongly recommend you do so, since you should *not* use the root account for your regular work! The root login should only be used for system maintenance. The root user has full access to the system configuration files and it is very easy to render the system unusable by accident. Therefore, click **Yes** here. If you choose not to create a sample user account, click **No**. This will skip the following screen.

ENTER USERNAME Please enter username, description and password of the sample user.				
Login name	:lxuser :			
Password	*****			
Re-enter password	*****			
Description of user				
Example user SuSE Linux (6.Z :			
< Continue >	< Abort >			

Figure 46. YaSY: adding a user account

Figure 46 shows the sample user creation form. Select a login name (do not use capital letters) and a password. The login name should be short, for example the first name of this user or an abbreviation of first and last name. The description of the user should be the full name or a short statement about this user account. Click **Continue** to create the user account.

The next window will ask you to set up your modem. If you have one, click **Yes**. Clicking **No** will skip the following window.

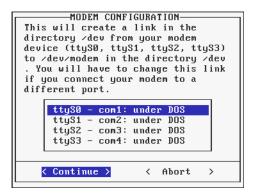


Figure 47. YaST: modem configuration

Figure 47 displays the modem configuration screen. Select the serial port where your modem is connected to. YaST will create a symbolic link /dev/modem that will point to the respective serial device. Please note that this is only the first step in configuring your modem for Linux. The symbolic link just makes it easier for other applications to find the modem. However, these applications still have to be configured manually to be able to "talk" with the modem later on. Click **Continue** to create the link.

2.3.8 Mouse configuration

After configuring your modem, you can now configure the mouse. If you intend to use the X-Windows system later on or want to use the mouse on the text console, click **Yes**. If you do not need a mouse, click **No** to skip the following mouse configuration dialogs.

MOUSE CONFIGURATION Please choose your mouse from the list. A link from your mouse device to /dev/mouse will be created in the directory /dev .		
Microsoft compatible serial mouse	[-tms]	
PS/2 mouse or C&T 82C710 (Aux-port)	[-t ps2]	
Logitech busmouse	[-t logi]	
ATI XL busmouse	[-t bm]	
Microsoft busmouse	[-t mb]	
Mouse Systems serial mouse	[-t msc]	
Old Logitech serial mouse (series 9)	[-t logi]	
Mouse Man protocol (serial Logitech mouse)	[-t mman]	
MSC 3-Byte (serial mouse)	[-t sun]	
Intellimouse - serial mouse with wheel	[-t ms3]	
Intellimouse - PS/2 mouse with wheel	[-t imps2]	
Plug-and-Play mice (Alternative to '-t ms')	[-t pnp]	
MM Series	[-t mm]	
Oldest 2-button serial mouse	[-t bare]	
< Continue > < Abort	>	

Figure 48. YaST: mouse configuration

First, you have to choose the type of mouse you have. The two most common types are Microsoft compatible or PS/2 mouse. IBM Netfinity servers use PS/2, therefore select **PS/2 mouse**. If your mouse is connected to a serial port, it is most likely a Microsoft compatible mouse. If you choose a serial mouse, you will also have to select the correct serial port as shown on Figure 49.

MOUSE CONFIGURATION r mouse needs a serial port. ch one do you want to use?]
ttyS0 - com1: under DOSttyS1 - com2: under DOSttyS2 - com3: under DOSttyS3 - com4: under DOS	
<pre>Continue > < Abort ></pre>	-

Figure 49. YaST: serial mouse port selection

YaST will create a symbolic link /dev/mouse, that will point to the correct mouse device (for example /dev/psaux for PS/2 mice or /dev/ttyS0 for a serial mouse on the first serial port).

CONFIRMATION
GpM is a program that lets you use the Mouse to copy and paste text between the virtual consoles. Select "Yes" if you want to run this program automatically at boot time. You may encounter problems with XFree86 when running gpm with a bus Mouse. If XFree86 does not start or produces an error Message saying that the Mouse cannot be used, turn gpm off. Bo you want to run gpm -t ps2 -M /dev/Mouse & at boot time?
K Yes X K No X

Figure 50. YaST: GPM configuration

GPM is a helpful program, if you do a lot of work on the command line in text mode. It enables you to copy and paste text between virtual consoles by highlighting the text with the mouse. Some applications, like the Midnight Commander (MC) can also be operated with the mouse. Select **Yes** if you want GPM to be started on system startup. Selecting **No** will skip the following window.

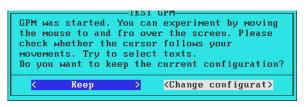


Figure 51. YaST: GPM test window

YaST will now start GPM to let you test your configuration. Try to move the mouse around, the cursor should follow your mouse movement. Also try to select some text by highlighting it with the left mouse button. If the cursor does not move at all, or jumps randomly across the screen, you have most likely chosen the wrong mouse protocol. Click **Change configuration** to return to the previous screen and try another mouse protocol. If everything is working fine, click **Keep** to continue. And no, unfortunately you cannot use the mouse for this :-)

YaST will now terminate and finish to boot the system.

tyS0 at 0x03f8 (irg = 4) is a 16550A	
$t_{\rm US1}$ at $0.02f8$ (irg = 3) is a 16550A	
tyS2 at $0x03e8$ (irg = 4) is a 16550A	
tyS2 at 0x02e8 (irg = 3) is a 16550A	done
etting up network device eth0	done
etting up routing (using /etc/route.conf)	done
e-Starting RPC portmap daemon	done
e-Starting syslog services	done
nitializing random number generator	done
tarting NFS server	done
tarting INET services (inetd)	done
oading keymap gwerty/us.map.gz	done
nitializing SMTP port. (sendmail)	done
tarting CRON daemon	done
tarting Name Service Cache Daemon	done
aster Resource Control: runlevel 2 has been	
Please enter "root" to login as user root	

SuSE login: _

Figure 52. SuSE Linux login

Log in as user root with the password you provided during the installation to finalize the installation. Of course you can also log in and start working with the regular user account you have created.

Congratulations! The basic installation of SuSE Linux is now finished. Now you can start configuring the X-Windows system (2.5, "XFree86 configuration" on page 44) and the additional services.

2.4 Installation with ServeRAID

The Installation of SuSE Linux 6.2 on servers with IBM ServeRAID controllers is a bit different from the installation procedure described in the previous section, because the ServeRAID driver is very new and has been updated and improved after the distribution was finished. Future releases of SuSE Linux will not have this limitation and you will be able to install it on a ServeRAID system without these additional steps.

Nevertheless, SuSE Linux 6.2 contains an early version of the driver, you can boot and install the system with it. However, we recommend you download the latest boot image for the installation and you should definetely use the latest driver, if you intend to use this Linux system in a production environment.

Before starting the actual installation, we advise you to update the server's BIOS and the ServeRAID firmware (use Version 3.50B or later) as well. The required files can be found at:

http://www.pc.ibm.com/support

After upgrading the firmware, create the desired RAID partitions first by booting off the ServeRAID DOS diskette or the ServeRAID CD. Please follow the documentation for these tools for how to do this. **Note**: Enabling the write-back cache will result in faster formats during the installation process, but can be hazardous if there is a power failure. Refer to the ServeRAID documentation for more information about this subject.

The following sections describe the necessary preliminary steps and the differences from the basic installation covered in 2.3, "Basic Linux installation" on page 6.

2.4.1 Preparing the installation boot disk

To install the system with the latest driver available, you first have to download the respective boot disk image. You cannot boot directly from the CD-ROM in this case, since this boot image does not contain the newest ServeRAID driver.

You can get the boot floppy image from SuSE's FTP server:

ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/suse/i386/update/6.2/disks/servraid

After downloading, you need to "dump" this image to a floppy disk. Because it is the actual raw image of the floppy, you cannot simply copy it to the diskette. If you already run Linux on another system, insert a blank floppy and use the following command line (assuming, that the downloaded image resides in the current directory):

dd if=./servraid of=/dev/fd0 bs=8192

This will write the image to the floppy disk. You can verify the success of this operation by taking a look at the directory of the disk (it contains a plain MSDOS filesystem) by using the mdir command from the mtools package.

```
SuSE:" # ls -l servraid
-гы-г--г-- 1 root root 1474560 Oct
SuSE:" # dd if=./servraid of=/dev/fd0 bs=8192
                                            1474560 Oct 11 07:13 servraid
180+0 records in
180+0 records out
SuSE:~ # mdir a:
 Volume in drive A has no label
 Volume Serial Number is 6878-E2AB
Directory for A:∕
ldlinux sys
                      5860 07-19-1999
                                             15:54
                   729966 07-22-1999 14:43
2424 07-22-1999 14:43
107 07-22-1999 14:43
initdisk gz
message
syslinux cfg
                 --- 20 107
676711 10-01-1999
1 415 06
linux
                                              5:17
                          11 1415 068 bytes
41 472 bytes free
         5 files
SuSE:~ # _
```

Figure 53. Dumping a floppy image using Linux

If you do not have a possibility to use Linux to create the boot floppy, you can also use another PC running MS-DOS or Windows. There is a DOS tool called rawrite on the first CD-ROM of SuSE Linux. Download the floppy image and insert the SuSE CD-ROM in your drive. Here is an example session (assuming that the floppy image is located in C:\temp and the CD-ROM is in drive F:):

```
C:\>f:\dosutils\rawrite\rawrite
RaWrite 1.2 - Write disk file to raw floppy diskette
Enter source file name: c:\temp\servraid
Enter destination drive: a:
Please insert a formatted diskette into drive A: and press -ENTER- :
Number of sectors per track for this disk is 18
Writing image to drive A:. Press ^C to abort.
Track: 79 Head: 1 Sector: 16
Done.
C:\>dir /w a:
Uolume in drive A has no label.
Volume Serial Number is 6B7B-E2AB
Directory of A:\
LDLINUX.SYS LINUX INITDISK.GZ MESSAGE SYSLINUX.CFG
5 File(s) 1.413.101 bytes
43.520 bytes free
C:\>_
```

Figure 54. Creating a boot floppy image with rawrite

You can now start the installation by booting the installation system from this floppy disk.

2.4.2 Notes about the Installation procedure

The installation process will now be performed as described in the previous chapter. The ServeRAID adapter should be detected on bootup; you do not need to install a special driver. Make sure to add the right network driver before you proceed to the hard drive partitioning. The different logical drives you defined in the ServeRAID system will appear as separate SCSI hard disks. You can partition them like a regular hard disk. Please follow the guidelines about partitioning in 2.10, "Partitioning for experts" in the SuSE manual.

You can now follow the installation steps as described in the previous chapter.

When you get prompted for the kernel to install (see Figure 31 on page 27), select **SCSI Kernel IBM ServeRAID**. We will replace this image later on with the newer one from the boot floppy, but we need to install a kernel image in order to be able to configure LILO, the Linux Loader. Now complete the installation as described above. You should end up with the login prompt as shown in Figure 52 on page 40. Log in as the root user to perform the following post-installation steps.



Stop

Do not reboot the system before you have executed the following steps! You will not be able to boot the installed system without executing them!

The kernel image that has been installed during the installation process is using an older version of the IBM ServeRAID driver. We will now install the kernel image from the boot floppy as our new boot kernel.

To do this, insert the boot floppy in the floppy drive. Issue the command:

mcopy a:linux /boot/vmlinz

This will install the updated boot kernel image from the floppy disk in the /boot directory.

You also need to install a modified LILO from the first CD (below /unsorted/lilo), because the currently installed LILO is not able to boot from the ServeRAID (the Expanded BIOS Data Area will be overwritten). Insert the first CD-ROM and mount it using the command:

mount /cdrom

To update the installed package, type:

rpm -Uhv --force /cdrom/unsorted/lilo/lilo.rpm

Unmount the CD with the unount /cdrom command afterwards.

You now have to run LILO again by typing lilo. This will write the new boot manager code to the boot sector of your hard disk.

This will give you the following output "added Linux *" (or however you named your boot configuration during the installation).

The system can now be safely rebooted and you should be able to boot the system directly from the ServeRAID adapter.

For more information about how to administrate your ServeRAID adapter using the ServeRAID utilities, see Chapter 4., "Using the ServeRAID utilities" on page 75.

2.5 XFree86 configuration

After the initial installation, the system will only boot up on the text console. While this is fine if you want to use Linux only as a server operating system, many people prefer a window-based user interface. If you want to use a graphical desktop environment like KDE or GNOME, you first have to configure the X-Windows system to fit your configuration. Unfortunately, many IBM Netfinity systems use the S3 Trio3D video chipset, which is only partly supported by the version of XFree86 that is in cluded on the SuSE Linux 6.2 CD-ROMs. You should downlad the latest version (3.3.5 at the time of writing) from the SuSE ftp Server first. You can find the current release at the following address:

ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/SuSE-Linux/suse_update/XFree86-3.3.5-SuSE/SuSE-6
.2/xsvga.rpm

To configure XFree86, we recommend you use SaX, SuSE's advanced X configuration tool. For a more detailed documentation of SaX, see section 9.1, "Configuration using SaX" in the SuSE Linux manual. If SaX fails for some reason, you can still use XF86Setup or xf86config as a fallback solution. Both belong to the XFree86 tool collection and can also be used to configure XFree86. However, they are not as user friendly as SaX and you may need some more experience with XFree86 to use them.

To start SaX, just type sax on the command line after you have logged in as user root. If you already know, which X server (the "driver") is the correct one for your video card, you can also use sax -s <servername>, for example sax -s svga.

File Se	attings Infos	Help
Mol	Device Properties Options Test	
Ve BOE GEN LOG MIC PRIN	Protocol PS/2 Choose mouse protocol	1 ∲ COM 3 2 ∲ PS / 2 dev/psaux
	Device /dev/psaux L Choose mouse driver	ons
Preson	<u>Apply</u> <u>OK</u> <u>Cancel</u>	4

After SaX finishes loading its configuration data, you will be presented with the mouse configuration dialog shown in Figure 55.

Figure 55. SaX: startup window

Because SaX is a graphical configuration tool, you first need to configure your mouse to be able to operate SaX more conveniently. If you configured your mouse during the initial system installation, you should already be able to move the mouse. If not, you have to use the keyboard by pressing the Tab key to move between the different input fields.

If your mouse is moving fine, click the folder named **Test** to test your mouse.

File Se	attings Infos	Help
Mol	Device Properties Options Test	
Ve BOE GEN LOC MIC PRIN	Mouse handling Right hand Left hand	1 💠 COM 3 2 💠 PS / 2 dev/mouse
	Executed commands	ons ons
Preson	Apply OK Cancel	<u>Next >></u>

Figure 56. SaX: mouse test window

If your mouse has only two buttons, you can emulate the third (middle) mouse button by pressing the left and right button at the same time. To activate this emulation mode, Select the Options folder and check **Emulate 3 buttons**.

File Se	ttings Infos		Help
<u>M</u> ol	Device Properties Option	s T <u>e</u> st	
Ve BOE GEN	Settings	Baudrate	1 💠 COM 3
LOC MIC	Emulate 3 buttons	1200	2 💠 PS/2
PRIN	🖾 ChordMiddle		dev/mouse
	Flags	ý ↓ ↓ 4800	
	🗇 Disable DTR		ons
	🔲 Disable RTS	♦ 9600	ons
A			
Press		ply <u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>N</u> ext >>

Figure 57. SaX: mouse options

Click **Apply** to apply the change. If your mouse is working fine, click **OK** to close the mouse configuration dialog. Click **Next** >> in the bottom right corner to continue to the keyboard configuration window.

File Settings Infos		Help
Mouse Keyboard	<u>C</u> ard M <u>o</u> nitor Desktop	
Model	Keyboard	
Generic 104-key Pd Japanese 106-key Keytronic FlexPro Microsoft Natural Language U.S. English United Kingdom	Clear Testield	
Apply Expert	🗖 remap dead	keys
Press F10 to enter m	enu <u>N</u> e	xt >> [

Figure 58. SaX: Keyboard configuration

By default, SaX adopts the keyboard configuration from the initial installation. Select the keyboard model and language, if necessary. You can use the test field to enter some text for testing purposes. If you keyboard is working fine, click **Next** >> to continue to the video card configuration window.

File Settings Infos		Help		
Mouse Keyboard Card	M <u>o</u> nitor <u>D</u> esktop			
Vendor	Name			
III GENERIC SERVER SELECTIO 2TH MAX 3DLABS A-TREND ACCELGRAPHICS ACTIX ACUMOS AOPEN AST Info	S3 VIRGE S3 VIRGE SVGA TRIDENT TSENG VGAT6 VOODOO BANSHEE W32			
Expert XServer: XF86_VGA16 Memory: 256k DAC: 28				
Press F10 to enter menu		<u>N</u> ext >>		

Figure 59. SaX: X Server selection

If SaX was able to detect your video card, you will see the word Autodetect in the Name field. You can then proceed to the monitor configuration window immediately. If your video card has not been detected, you can either select it from the Vendor list, or choose **Generic Server Selection** and select the correct X server for your video card. Some cards require additional configuration options. Click **Expert** to open the advanced configuration options dialog. Click **Next** >> to select your monitor.

File Settings Infos			Help
Mouse Keyboard	<u>C</u> ard Monitor De	esktop	
Vendor		Name	
III LCD III A.C.T. KERN AAMAZING ACER ADDONICS ADEX ADI ALPHA Expert	31–37.5 Khz Vsync: 5	1024X768@75HZ 1280X1024@75HZ 1600X1200@75HZ 340X480@75HZ 800X600@75HZ	
Press F10 to enter mer	าน		Next >>

Figure 60. SaX: Monitor configuration window

In order to create an optimized screen resolution and refresh rate, SaX needs to know the capabilities (the horizontal and vertical frequency range) of your monitor.

Select your monitor vendor and name from the list. If you cannot find your model, you can either choose a generic VESA model, or enter the correct frequency range in the Expert Mode. Please see the technical documentation of your monitor for the correct values.



Stop

Please make sure to enter the correct frequency range in the expert mode! You can severely damage your monitor by choosing a frequency range that is too high for your model, if your monitor does not have a self-protection circuit.

Click Next >> to advance to the window.

File Settings Infos		Help
Mouse Keyboard Card Monit	tor Desktop	
Desktop	Colors	Resolution
	Configure Desktop color sche Indicates 640x480) standard
<u>E</u> xpert		
Press F10 to enter menu		<u>N</u> ext >>

Figure 61. SaX: Screen selection window

The screen selection dialog gives you the opportunity to select the desired color depth and resolution. SaX will only display those resolutions and color depths that will fit into your video card's memory. After choosing the correct values, click **Next** >> to test this screen resolution.

SaX will now compute the best refresh rate for this resolution and switch to the display. If you do not see a picture, your monitor powers off, or begins to flicker, press Ctrl+Alt+Backspace, to return to SaX. If your monitor displays the higher resolution ok, you can now make some fine adjustments to this resolution. Click **Save** if you are satisfied with the result.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration

This chapter will give you an overview of how to perform the most common administrative tasks on a SuSE Linux system. Most of these tasks can be done with YaST, SuSE's configuration and administration tool. However, you may still edit the different configuration files manually, if you wish. YaST will detect manual changes and will not overwrite them.

3.1 Adding and removing software packages using YaST

SuSE Linux uses the RPM package manager to manage software packages of the distribution. RPM uses a database to store information about all files that belong to a certain package, including some additional information about the package. RPM itself is a command-line program. You can use it from the command line to add, remove or obtain information about software packages and system files. See 3.2, "Package management using RPM" on page 56 for more details. YaST, SuSE's administration and configuration tool, can act as a user-friendly front end to RPM.

To install or remove software packages, insert the first CD-ROM and start SuSE's installation and configuration tool YaST by typing yast at the command line (as user root). YaST will start up and you will see YaST's main menu.

YaST - Yet another Setup Tool YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 Su		
Language: English Media: CD-ROM ATAPI EIDE /dev/hdc Root-Device: /dev/hda3		
General help for installation Adjustments of installation	->	
Choose/Install packages Update system		
System administration -> Show README file for installation media. Copyright Exit YaST		

Figure 62. YaST: main menu

Highlight the menu entry **Choose/Install packages** and press Enter. Alternatively, you can invoke YaST with the following parameters:

yast --mask install --autoexit

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

This will automatically open the installation main menu and will return to the command line on exit.

Installation	YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH
— Logfile: ∕mnt∕var∕	adm/inst-log/installation-991004-0
Reading description Base system: unknow Source media: SuSE- 2710 packages on in Analyzing dependenc	What if
Looking for already Ø packages are inst Reading DU-files	Start installation Index of all series and packages Package information
New configuration: default (/usr/lib language.english Added new configura	Install packages Delete packages
Haaea new configura	Main menu
F1=Help) TAB=Installation log window ESC=Main menu

Figure 63. YaST: package installation main menu

SuSE Linux offers a choice of software configurations. These contain a list of selected software packages to fit a certain need. Select **Load configuration** to load a predefined configuration.

In	nsta	alla	tion			YaST (Jersion	1.01	(c) 19	94-99	SuSE G	мЪН
-					L	.oad config	guration					
R B 2 A L 2 R] []]]]]]	SuSE SuSE SuSE SuSE SuSE SuSE	Gnome sy KDE syst Minimum Multimed	ent syst steм. eм. systeм. ia syste oriented	ем. (textr			/to (5) (4) (6) (9) Int (5)	78 - 53 - 66 - 41 -	1.17 G 1.30 G 97.1 M 2.20 G 1.22 G)))))
		F1=	Help	F2=1	escripti	.on F9=1	Floppy					┘║
	<		Add	l	> <	Replac	ce	> <	A	bort		>
			F1	l=Helv T	'AB=Insta	llation lo	oa windo	w ESC=	Main me	nu		

Figure 64. YaST: load software configuration

You can now Add the files from a configuration to your current configuration, or you can Replace it by one of these configurations. If you replace a configuration, all currently installed packages that are not part of the selected configuration will be marked for deletion! Press Esc to return to the main menu.

To add packages to or remove packages from your current configuration, select **Change / create configuration**. This will open the Series selection window shown in Figure 65.

Series selection YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-9	J9 SuSE GmbH
🕝 Series —	
snd Sound related stuff	[3.2 M]
spl Spell checking utilities and databases	[10.2 M]
tcl Tcl/Tk/TclX, Tcl-Language and Tk-Toolkit for X	[16.5 M]
tex TeX/LaTeX and applications	[362.4 K]
x Base X Window System - XFree86\tm 3.3	[29.4 M]
x3d 3D stuff for X11 and console	[10.9 M]
xap X Applications	[31.9 M]
xdev Development under X11	[22.2 M]
xsru Several X Servers (XFree86\tm 3.3 and other)	[2.0 M]
xv XView (OpenLook, Applications)	[Ø B]
xwm Window Manager and Desktop	[8.9 M]
zq Source packages	[0 B]
zų oburce packages	r 0 D1
device-name partition total used free free% mount-point	;
/dev/hda3 Linux 836.2 M 620.5 M 215.6 M 25% /	
/dev/hda1 Linux 5.5 M 320.0 K 5.2 M 94% /boot	
F1=Help F4=Resorting F5=Dependencies F10=Esc=Exit	

Figure 65. YaST: series selection

All software packages are categorized ito different series. Choose your category and press Enter to see all packages belonging to this series.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 53

Package selection – Series xsrv YaST Version 1.01 –– (c) 1994	
[] xi740 XBF server for i740 based cards	Kr3>=Zoom
[] xmach32 Mach32 Server	Free
[] xmach64 Mach64 Server	I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
[] xmach8 Mach8 server	212.3 M
[] xmono X-monochrome server	/boot
[] xp9k Accelerated server for P9000-based cards	5.2 M
[] xriva3d 2D/3D X Server for Riva 128/1282X/INT/INT2 base	5.6 1
[] xrush Hardware accelerated 3D X Server for 3Dfx Voodo	
[] xs3 server for S3-based cards (excluding ViRGE and	
[] xs3v server for S3 (ViRGE and ViRGE/VX)-based cards	
[] xsis alpha quality server for SiS 530 and 620	
[X] xsuga server for suga cards	
[X] xvga16 server for vga cards (16 colors)	
[] xw32 server for W32 cards	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Version: 3.3.4-7	
Package Size: installed 3.4 M (compressed 1.3 M)	
If you don't have a SVGA card installed you shouldn't install th	nis server.
Please check the handbook on details about the chipsets supporte	
F1=Help F2=Description F5=Dependencies F10=Ok Esc	=Abort

Figure 66. YaST: package selection

To select a package for installation/removal/update, press the Spacebar or Enter. This will toggle the status of the selected package. The indicator in the first column displays the current status:

Table 1. Package selection indicators

Indicator	Package status
[]	Package is not installed and not selected for installation
[X]	Package is marked for installation
[i]	Package is already installed
[R]	Package is installed and will be replaced / reinstalled
[D]	Package is installed and marked for deletion

If you want to change the package status of multiple packages at once, press Shift+A (see Figure 67).

Package select	tion – Series xsrv YaST Version 1.01 –– (c) 1994	I-99 SuSE GmbH
		<f3>=Zoom</f3>
[] x8514	server for 8514-based cards	Mount point
[] xagx	server for agx-cards	Free
[] xfbdev	X server for the vesafb device in recent Linux	1
[] xglint		136.6 M
[] xi128	For all Packages:	boot
[]×i740		4.3 M
[] xmach32	[] -> [X]	adm∕mount
[] xmach64	[X] -> []	0 B
[] xmach8	$[i] \rightarrow [R]$	
[] xmono	[i] -> [D]	
[] ×p9k	$[R] \rightarrow [i]$	
[] xriva3d	$[R] \rightarrow [D]$	
[] xrush	[D] -> [i]	
[] xs3	$[D] \rightarrow [R]$	
Version:	Continue > < Abort >	
Package Size:		
Please only in	st	ard.
F1=Help	F2=Description F5=Dependencies F10=Ok Esc	:=Abort

Figure 67. YaST: apply changes to all packages

After you have made your choice, press F10 to return to the series selection. You can now select or remove packages from other series, or press F10 once more, to return to the software configuration main menu. If you made any modifications to your current software configuration, you can start the actual installation or removal of packages by selecting **Start Installation**. If you want to verify what packages will be installed, removed or replaced, select **What if...**

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 55

Installat	tion [*] YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE Gmb	H
L	INFORMATION	
- Logfile		_
Ŭ	The installation of the present configuration would have	
Reading d	the following consequences:	
Base syst	the forfouring consequences.	
Source Me	Because analysis (a) (-22, 7, M	
	Remove package(s): 22.7 M	
2728 pack		
Analyzing	ge_exec e	
Looking f		
282 packa	Install package(s): 4.1 M	
Reading D		
Ŭ	*bwatch beo *fortune fun *netboot beo	
	Update of packages	
	opuate of packages	
	*xroach fun	
	< Continue >	
	F1=Help TAB=Installation log window ESC=Main menu	

Figure 68. YaST: what if...

Click **Continue** to return to the main menu. If you are satisfied with your selection, select **Start installation**. YaST will now check on which CD the necessary packages are located and will prompt you for the respective CD. After the packages have been installed, you will return to the main menu shown in Figure 63 on page 52. You can now either add or remove additional packages. If you want to save your current package selection (for example for copying it to another system), select **Save configuration**. You will then be prompted where you want to save the configuration to. Select **to floppy** or **to hard disk**, depending on your needs. If you are saving to a floppy disk, make sure that it does not contain valuable data! The diskette will be erased during this process.

You can return to the YaST main menu by selecting Main menu.

3.2 Package management using RPM

Package management can also be done directly with the RPM package manager on the command line. The following table shows some of the most frequently used commands.

Command	Description		
rpm -q <package></package>	If package is installed, check version and build number of installed package		

Command	Description
rpm -qi <package></package>	Obtain some more information about an installed package
rpm -qa	List all installed packages
rpm -qf <filename></filename>	Determine the (installed) package that <file> belongs to</file>
rpm -Uhv <package.rpm></package.rpm>	Update/Install the file package.rpm showing a progress bar
rpm -F -v ./*.rpm	Update (freshen) all currently installed packages using the RPM files in the current directory
rpmhelp	Get some help about the different options and parameters



Note

If you install packages using RPM on the command line, make sure to run the script SuSEconfig afterwards! Some packages require post-installation maintenace.

More information and options about RPM can be found in the manual page (man rpm), the RPM how-to (less /usr/doc/howto/en/RPM-HOWTO.txt.gz) and on the RPM home page at http://www.rpm.org. You can also display a short overview by running rpm --help.

3.3 User and group administration using YaST

Linux is a multi-user operating system. To differentiate between the various users, each user has to log in with a unique user name and password. Each user belongs to a primary user group, but he can also be a member of additional other groups as well (up to 16 groups). Each user name is associated with a user ID (UID), which is also unique throughout the system. The same applies to user group names and group IDs (GIDs).

Usually each user has a personal home directory. This is a piece of space on the file system (usually a directory below /home, for example /home/username) which belongs to him and where he can store his personal files (for example e-mail or text documents). Other users generally have no access to the files stored therein.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 57

You should carefully consider adding user groups before adding users. Sometimes there are concerns about restricting access to some parts of the user filesystem. You can do this by creating separate user groups to control access to various files and filesystems. Also if you are going to be creating a system with many users, you should consider creating separate groups divided by what they are doing on the system. You can create an admin group for admins, a db2user group for DB2 users, and so forth. Linux allows you to control access to both files and directories by users, groups and everyone on the system.

Another concern in setting up users and groups is that you may want to share files with other systems. This can be done by the CD, tape, diskette or any similar device. You can use the network to share information with NFS, Samba, IPX and other network packages. If you use user and group names and characteristics that are not the same on all systems doing the sharing, then you can have file sharing and access problems.

If you are creating logins and groups on each box separately, it is often best to use a single system where all your IDs can be created. This system is then used as a reference. It is not necessary that everyone actually logs into the reference system. It only exists to coordinate ID and group creation and to prevent non-standard IDs and groups. A user also cannot log into the reference system if the password is not enabled. This will prevent unauthorized access to the system. If you want to administer lot of users on different machines, you should consider setting up NIS. See Chapter 12, "NIS - Network Information System" on page 189 for more information about this.

It is one of the root user's tasks to add and remove user or group accounts. With YaST, SuSE provides an easy-to-use tool for user and group administration. To use it, log in as the root user and type the command:

yast --mask user --autoexit

Alternatively you can invoke YaST by simply typing yast and choosing the menu **System administration -> User administration**. The following window will appear:

USER ADMIN	ISTRATION
In this mask you can get information a and modify and delete existing users.	bout existing users, create new users,
User name	:
Numerical user ID	:
Group (numeric or by name)	:
Home directory	:
Login shell	:
Password Re-enter password	
Access to modem permitted	[]]
Detailed description of the user	:
F1=Help F3=Selection li F4=Create u	ser F5=Delete user F10=Leave mask

Figure 69. YaST: user administration main window

To add a new user, fill in the blanks. The user name should be short and in lowercase (YaST will do some sanity check on the input). After you pressed Tab or Enter to advance to the next input field, YaST will automatically look for the next available user ID and will assign it to this user. The entries Group, Home directory and Login shell will also be filled with default values, but you are free to change them to fit your requirements.

Some information about the different shells:

- **/bin/bash** This is the Bourne Again Shell, which is an extension to the Bourne Shell. This is the most popular shell for Linux.
- **/bin/sh** This is the standard Bourne Shell that has been around since almost the beginning of UNIX.
- /bin/ash This is another version of the Bourne Shell.
- /bin/bsh This is the same as /bin/ash to which it is linked.
- **/bin/ksh** This is the standard Korn shell that is the most popular shell for UNIX Administration.
- /bin/tcsh This is a public domain extension of the C Shell.
- **/bin/csh** This is the standard C Shell that was originated by the University of California at Berkeley.
- /bin/zsh This is another extension of the Bourne Shell.

Your choice of shells is strictly a matter of preference, but generally UNIX admins prefer Bourne or Korn Shell programs whereas programmers tend to prefer C Shell-based programs.

If you want this user to be able to connect to the Internet using a modem, check **Access to modem permitted**. This will add this user to the user groups dialout and uucp, which have the necessary permissions to initiate a dial-up connection using the tool wvdial. The entry fields User name, Group and Login shell also provide a selection list where you can choose a previously defined value. Press F3 in the respective entry field.

After you have filled in all fields, press F4 to actually create the user. If the home directory of that user did not exist before, it will now be created and the contents of the directory /etc/skel will be copied into it. This skeleton directory contains a basic framework of configuration files for the user to start from.

If you want to remove a user account, just select the login name using F3 or enter the name manually in the user name input form. To delete this user, press F5 and confirm the following question with **Yes.** You will be prompted for a confirmation before the user's home directory will be removed, too.



Figure 70. YaST: home directory removal confirmation

After you have finished the user administration, press F10 to return to the main menu.

3.4 Adding users on the command line

To add users to the Linux system you can also use the command useradd. In Linux you can find the options to useradd by typing the command by itself as in Figure 71. This is recommended only for commands that you know require an option. Otherwise, you may inadvertently execute a command you do not want to.

```
SuSE:~ # useradd
usage: useradd [-u uid [-o]] [-g group] [-G group,...]
[-d home] [-s shell] [-c comment] [-m [-k template]]
[-f inactive] [-e expire ] [-p passwd] name
useradd -D [-g group] [-b base] [-s shell]
[-f inactive] [-e expire ]
```

Figure 71. The useradd command

You can also use the man command to obtain more detailed information about the different parameters.

Other commands have information presented by using the --help option. This option is not implemented in all commands but in the case of the useradd command it will present basically the same information you see in Figure 71.

You can find out what your current default values are with the command useradd -D as shown in Figure 72.

```
SUSE:~ # useradd -D
GROUP=100
HOME=/home
INACTIVE=0
EXPIRE=10000
SHELL=/bin/bash
SKEL=/etc/skel
```

Figure 72. Default values for creating a user ID

The explanation of the options are as follows:

-c comment

This is a comment field about the user. It has been traditionally called the General Electric Comprehensive Operating System (GECOS) field and can include such information as office room numbers, phone numbers, etc. Any string of characters must be put into double quotes. For example, -c comment "John Doe, rm. 45, x 78965".

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 61

-d home_dir

The home directory location of the user. If this is not specified then the default is to append the login name to the end of the default value for HOME shown in Figure 72. For example, the home directory for jdoe will be /home/jdoe unless specified here.

-e expire_date

This is the date on which the user account will be disabled. The date is specified in the format MM/DD/YY where MM is the month, DD is the date and YY is the two-digit format of the year. (Note that even though the date is represented in two digits, Linux converts the date to a format that is not Y2K dependent, so there are no Y2K worries here.) The default is the value of EXPIRE in Figure 72.

-f inactive_time

This gives the status of the account. The value of 0 says to disable the account when the password expires. A value of -1 says not to disable it. The default is the value of INACTIVE in Figure 72.

-g initial_group

The initial group that a user logs in with. This can be a name or number of a currently existing group. This is specified in the /etc/password file as the GID or Group ID value. The default group is given by the value of GROUP in Figure 72.

-G group[, \ldots]

This is a list of any additional existing groups the user may belong to. Each group is separated by a comma.

-m [-k skeleton dir]

The -m option says to create the user's home directory if it does not exist. The skeleton_dir is the location of files that are copied to a new user's directory. The default location, if you do not use the -m option, is the /etc/skel directory. The default is the value of SKEL in Figure 72.

-s shell

The is the shell that the user will first log in with. The default is the value of SHELL in Figure 72.

-u uid [-o]

This is the numeric UID or user ID number that is used by Linux to distinguish one user from the other. All UIDs must be unique unless the $-\circ$

option is used. The $-\circ$ option is often used for creating IDs that have the same access rights, but different logins and passwords. The system looks only at the UID and GID values for determining access rights.

-r

This is used to create a system account whose UID is lower than a certain number defined in /etc/login.defs. You will also need to specify the -m option if you want to create the home directory. Otherwise, it will not be created. System accounts generally have UID values between 0 and 99.

login

This is the login name that the user will log in with. This will need to be unique on the system.

3.4.1 Modifying users - the command line version

You can modify user logins with the usermod command.

```
# usermod
usage: usermod [-u uid [-0]] [-g group] [-G group,...]
[-d home [-m]] [-s shell] [-c comment] [-l new_name]
[-f inactive] [-e expire ] [-p passwd] name
```

Figure 73. The usermod command

The options to the usermod command are basically the same as those for the useradd command, so they will not be repeated except for those that are different. With the usermod command you need to observe the following options.

-d home [-m]

The -m option says to move the contents of the current home directory to the new home directory and create the directory if it does not exist.

-l new_name

This allows you to change the user's user name that he logs in with. The user cannot be logged in with this name when he does this.

-p passwd

This allows you to set the password of the user from the command line. This can be useful if you have a program that automates password creation since you can use a variable in the place of the passwd string.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 63

3.4.2 Deleting users - the command line version

The command to delete users is userdel. You can see the options in Figure 74. This command is a lot simpler because there is not much choice you have when deleting a user.

```
( # userdel
usage: userdel [-r] name
```

Figure 74. The userdel command

The only option that you can use is:

-r

This says for you to remove the home directory and its contents. Otherwise the home directory and its contents will not be deleted.

3.4.3 Group administration using YaST

To administer user groups, select **System Administration -> Group administration** from the YaST main menu. Alternatively, start YaST from the command line using the following parameters:

yast --mask group --autoexit

This will get you directly to the group administration window:

GROUP ADMI	NISTRATION
In this mask you can retrieve informat can also create new groups, change gro	
Name of group	:
Numeric group id	:
Password for access to that group	:
Re-enter password	:
List of members of that group	:
F1=Help F3=Selection li F4=Creat	e F5=Delete F10=Leave mask

Figure 75. YaST: group administration window

Each user group has a unique name and ID. The default group for normal users is users. To create a new group, enter the name of the group and press Tab to advance to the next entry field. If you entered a new group name, YaST will automatically assign the next available group ID to this group. You can accept it or modify it to your needs. If this group is not intended to be a primary (default) user group, you can protect it with a password as well. All users that should be members of this group can be entered in the line **List of members of that group** (comma-separated). You can press F3 here to select them from the user list, or you can add them manually. Press F4 to create this group, F10 or Esc to leave this window.

If you want to delete a user group, select the group name with F3 or enter it manually and press F5 to delete it. Please note that this will not delete the user accounts belonging to this group! It will only remove the group information from the file /etc/groups. To leave the group administration window, press F10 or Esc.

3.5 Network configuration with YaST

A Linux system will in most cases be connected to one or more networks. YaST also offers configuration options to set up your network connection. If you need to connect your host to an Ethernet or token-ring network, you can use YaST to enter the correct networking parameters. If you did not define your network card during the initial installation, or if you added a new network card to your system, you first have to define the correct driver for this device. From the YaST main menu select **System administration -> Integrate** hardware into system -> Configure networking device. From the command line, type the following command to open the network device selection window shown in Figure 77 directly.

yast --mask netcard --autoexit

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 65

YaST - Yet another Setup Tool- YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH		
Language: English Media: CD-ROM ATAPI EIDE /dev/hdc Root-Device: /dev/hda3		
General help fo Adjustments of Choose/Install Update system System administ Show README fil Copyright Exit YaST	Kernel a Network Mouse configuration Configur Modem configuration Login co CD-ROM configuration	
	Security settings Change configuration file	

Figure 76. YaST: integrate hardware into system

Here you may select your	ON OF NETWORKING DEVICE networking device. ritten to /etc/conf.modules
Network type	: <mark>eth0</mark> :
Networking device type	[AMD PCI PCnet32 (PCI bus NE2100)]
Module options	
F3=Selecti	
< Continue	> < Abort >

Figure 77. YaST: network device selection

First enter the network type. The two most common ones are Ethernet (for example eth0, eth1, etc.) and token-ring (for example tr0, tr1, etc.). After entering the network type, select the correct driver for this card. Some drivers need additional options; please see Chapter 14, "Kernel parameters" in the SuSE Linux 6.2 manual for a detailed explanation of the possible values. Most modern PCI network cards do not need any additional parameters, so you can most likely skip this input field. Click **Continue** to finish this configuration dialog. YaST will now add this line to the kernel module configuration file /etc/conf.modules.

After you defined your network type, return to the YaST System administration menu.

Now you can define the networking parameters for this device. Select **System Administration** -> **Network configuration** -> **Network base configuration**. Alternatively, type the following command at the shell prompt to jump directly to the window shown in Figure 79:

YaST - Yet another Setup Tool- YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH		
Language: English Media: CD-ROM ATAPI EIDE /dev/hdc Root-Device: /dev/hda3		
General help fo Adjustments of Choose/Install Update system System administ Show README fil Copyright Exit YaST	Kernel and bootconfiguration -> Network Configur Login co Change host name	

yast --mask network --autoexit

Figure 78. YaST: network configuration options

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 67

Number	Active	Type of network D	evice name IP	address P	tP address
[0]	[X]		hØ 192.168	0.99	
[1]	[]	<no device=""></no>			
		<no device=""></no>			
[3]	11	<no device=""></no>			
		<create addi<="" an="" td=""><td>tional networl</td><td></td><td></td></create>	tional networl		

Figure 79. YaST: network base configuration

This configuration window allows you to assign IP addresses to network devices. If you did not configure your network device before, select the Type of Network first.

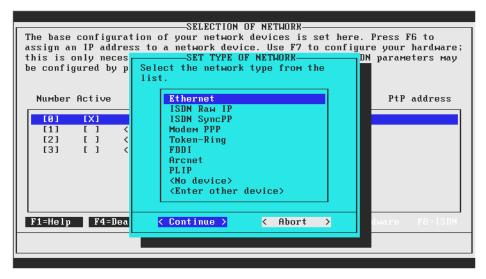


Figure 80. YaST: set type of network

Figure 80 shows the Set Type of Network selection box. Select the corresponding type for your network card and confirm the selection with **Continue**.

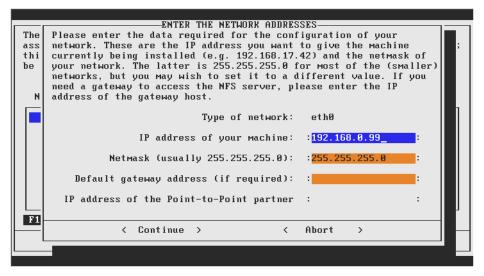


Figure 81. YaST: IP address configuration

After you have defined the network type, you can assign an IP address to this device. Press F5 to open up the dialog shown in Figure 81. Enter the IP address, Netmask and default gateway address, if necessary. Close the dialog box with **Continue**. If you configured a PLIP or ISDN device, you may also have to configure some additional hardware parameters by pressing F7.

If you have more than one network card, you can add it to the free lines below. If you need to add more than the predefined four lines, highlight **Create an additional network** and press Enter.

You can also use this dialog, if you want to assign more than one IP address to a single network card (IP aliasing). To do this, press F5 to select the type of network and choose **Enter other device**.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 69

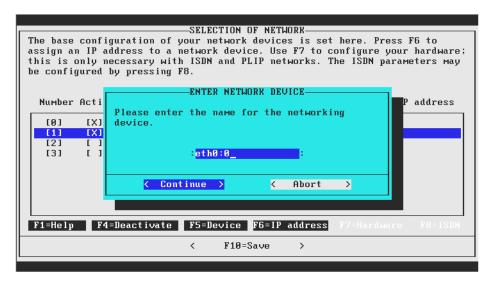


Figure 82. YaST: enter other networl device

You can add multiple IP addresses to one Ethernet card, by configuring it as eth0:0, eth0:1 and so on (IP aliasing support must be activated in the Linux kernel; the default SuSE kernel has been compiled with IP aliasing support).

After you have finished the network configuration, press F10 to save the current setup. YaST will now create the respective entries in /etc/rc.config and the network setup will be applied after the next reboot or after restarting the network and routing scripts.

3.6 Changing the configuration file with YaST

SuSE Linux utilizes a central configuration file /etc/rc.config to store most of the system configuration information. The contents of this file will be used by the init scripts on bootup, as well as for creating configuration files for the different services.

The format of this file is plain ASCII text. The configuration is stored in variables in the form VARIABLE=value. Additional comments are marked with a "#" at the beginning of the line. Since rc.config contains most of the configuration information, you do not need to edit the original configuration files for most services. It is sufficient to make the change in this single file; YaST (in combination with the SuSEconfig script collection) will take care of the correct creation of these files. However, if you are used to modifying the separate configuration files directly, you may still do so. SuSEconfig will

70 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

detect the manual change and will not overwrite them. Instead you will receive a notification that SuSEconfig has detected a manual change and will create its version of this file in <filename>.suseconfig. You are free to manually implement the changes from SuSEconfig to your file.

If you want to edit variables in rc.config, you can open it in a normal text editor. Each variable has some lines of comments above its definition to give you an overview of the meaning of it. These variables are also covered in section 17.6 "The variables in /etc/rc.config" in the SuSE manual. After you have modified entries in rc.config, you have to run the script SuSEconfig afterwards to apply the changes to the different configuration files.

Alternatively, you can use YaST as a comfortable front end to edit this variables. From the YaST main menu, select **System administration -> Change configuration file**. To go directly to this dialog from the command line, invoke YaST with the following parameters:

SYSTEM CONFIGURATION The following list shows the environment variables which a	re used to
configure your SuSE Linux system.	10 4004 10
молем	
MOUSE	
NAMESERUER NETCONFIG	
NETDEV_0	
NETDEV_1 NETDEV 2	
Current value <eth0></eth0>	
Comment:	
network device names (e.g. "eth0")	
F2=Show Info F3=Change value F4=Search F	10=Exit mask

Figure 83. YaST: view the system configuration file

yast --mask rcconfig --autoexit

Use the cursor keys to highlight the desired variable. F2 gives you a description of the currently highlighted option.

To search for a certain keyword (case-sensitive), press F4 and enter the desired search term.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 71

	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION			
The following list shows the environment variables which are used to				
configure your SuSE Linux system.				
	SEARCH ENTRY			
	Here you may search for an entry containing			
IFCONFIG_3	that string in the configuration file. The			
IPADDR_0	search starts at the actual position and searches downwards.			
IPADDR_1 IPADDR 2	Searches ubwiiwarus.			
IPADDR 3	: IP_FORWARD_			
IP DYNIP				
IP_FORWARD				
	Continue > Continue >			
Current value < <mark>no</mark> >				
Comment:	atom: forward ID packate			
runtime-configurable paramonants for the second sec				
is this nost a router? (ye:	\$7 110)			
F2=Show Info F3=Ch	ange value F4=Search F10=Exit mask			

Figure 84. YaST: search for keyword in configuration file

To modify the selected entry, press F3 and enter the new value in the dialog box.

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	
The following list shows the environment variables which are used to		
configure your SuSE Linux sys	stem.	
	SETTING OF ENVIRONMENT VARIABLE	
CREATE_RESOLVCONF	Please enter the new value for DHCLIENT.	
CRON		
CWD_IN_ROOT_PATH		
DEFAULT_WM	: <mark>no_</mark> :	
DELETE_OLD_CATMAN		
DELETE_OLD_CORE		
DHCLIENT	< Continue > < Abort >	
Current value < <mark>no</mark> >		
Comment:		
F2=Show Info F3=Cha	ange value F4=Search F10=Exit mask	

Figure 85. YaST: editing a variable in rc.config

Press F10 to finish the editing and return to the main menu after saving the changes in /etc/rc.config.

3.6.1 Finding Linux commands

You may want to run a Linux program from the command line prompt. If so, there are several directories that contain commands that you can run. You can run these without needing to know where they are because your search path includes a number of directories that will be searched whenever you try to execute a command. The search path is given by the environment variable \$PATH. You can view the content of this variable by running the following command:

echo \$PATH

If you want to find out where a command is located, execute the command:

whereis command_name

where $command_name$ is the command you are looking for. If you want to find the command yast you can execute:

whereis yast

This will give you the following results:

yast: /sbin/yast

You notice that this command is located in the /sbin directory. Many of the major administrative commands will be found in the /sbin and /usr/sbin directories.

Another helpful command for finding files on your system is locate. The locate command will also list files that match the search name, if they are not in your current search path. To search for all README documents on SuSE Linux run the following command:

locate README

Since this will be a huge amount of output, you might want to redirect the ouput to a text pager like less or more:

locate README | less

This will enable you to look at the output page by page. Press q to leave $\tt less$ and return to the command line.



Note -

SuSE Linux automatically runs updatedb once every 24 hours. If you cannot find what you are looking for run updatedb from a command line.

Chapter 3. Basic system administration 73

Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities

In this chapter we describe how to use and administer the IBM ServeRAID high-performance RAID adapter. The current version of the Linux driver supports all ServeRAID adapter versions. Before you start the installation of SuSE Linux on a RAID array, you need to define the RAID arrays and the logical drives. The logical drives will appear as physical disk drives to the operating system.

For more information about RAID and RAID levels, see Appendix A, "RAID levels" on page 235.

All SuSE Linux distributions from Version 6.2 and up support the ServeRAID SCSI adapter. To install the operating system follow the installation procedure described in 2.3, "Basic Linux installation" on page 6 and note the particularities about installing on a ServeRAID in 2.4, "Installation with ServeRAID" on page 40.

After you have installed and configured the system, get the RAID administration utilities from the following IBM Web site:

http://www.developer.ibm.com/welcome/netfinity/serveraid.html

The following files are available for download on this site:

- ips-100.tgz this file contains the kernel patch for the 2.2.x kernel, which enables support for IBM ServeRAID adapters in those kernels.
- ipsutils.rpm this file contains the Linux command line utilities for administrating the IBM ServeRAID SCSI adapter
- 009n012.exe this file contains the WIN32 Administration Client, which can be used to remotely configure and monitor the ServeRAID adapter used in a Linux installation

4.1 Installing ipsutils.rpm

To successfully install the ipsutils package you have to be logged in as user "root". After you have downloaded the ipsutil.rpm package you need to install it using RPM. The ipsutil package is a standard RPM package. SuSE Linux uses RPM for installing the packages, so the RPM utility is already installed on your system. See 3.2, "Package management using RPM" on page 56 for more information on RPM. To install the package, use the following command:

rpm - Uhv ipsutil.rpm

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

This assumes that your current directory is where the ipsutil.prm file resides. After you finished reading the copyright notice, press q to quit the text viewer. After you have accepted the license agreement with y, the necessary files will be installed on your system. To check if the utilities work, type the following command in a terminal window or on the console:

ipssend

You will see output similar to Figure 86.

Licensed Material - Property of IBM Corporation IBM ServeRAID Command Line Interface v3.50.17 Copyright (C) IBM Corporation 1996 - 1999 All Rights Reserved US Government Restricted Rights - Use, Duplication, or Disclosure Restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corporation					
Usage: IPSSEND <co< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></co<>					
Help : IPSSEND <co< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></co<>					
Command	Param 1	Param 2	Param 3	Param 4	Param 5
BACKUP DEVINFO DRIVEVER ERASEEVENT GETCONFIG GETEVENT GETSTATUS HSREBUILD INIT INITSYNC REBUILD RESTORE SETSTATE SYNCH	Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller Controller	Channel Channel Options Options Logical Drive Channel Channel Scope	NOPROMPT SCSI ID SCSI ID NOPROMPT NOPROMPT SCSI ID	New Channel New State	New SCSI ID

Figure 86. Ipssend command output

As you can see, ipssend supports quite a lot of commands for dealing with the IBM ServeRAID adapter. In the following sections we will cover the ones that are necessary in order to use the ServeRAID adapter efficiently.

4.2 ipssend commands

In this section we cover the different options of the *ipssend* command.

4.2.1 getconfig command

This command is used to get configuration information about the IBM ServeRAID controller, the logical drives and the physical drives. The getconfig command has the following syntax:

76 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

ipssend getconfig <Controller> <Options>

The parameters are explained in Table 3.

Table 3. getconfig command parameters

Parameter	Description	
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)	
Options	AD for controller information	
	LD for logical drive information	
	PD for physical device information	
	AL (default) for all information	

To get all information about the first ServeRAID controller, execute the following command:

ispsend getconfig 1

You will see a window similar to Figure 87.

Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Read Configuration has been initiated for Controller 1			
Controller Information			
Firmware Version Boot Block Version Date of Configuration Written Controller Configuration ID SCSI Channel Description Host Interface Description Initiator IDs (Channel/SCSI ID): Maximum Physical Devices Defunct Disk Drive Count Logical Drives/Offline/Critical: Rebuild Rate (Low/Medium/High) Read Ahead Unattended Mode (Yes/No) Concurrent Commands Supported Configuration Update Count	5/1999 Null Config 3 parallel SCSI wide 1 32 bit PCI 1/7 2/7 3/7 30 0 2/0/0 High Adaptive No 128		
Logical Drive Information			
Logical Drive Number 1 Status of Logical Drive Raid Level Size (in MB) Write Cache Status Number of Chunks Stripe Unit Size Access Blocked Part of Array Logical Drive Number 2 Status of Logical Drive Raid Level Size (in MB) Write Cache Status Number of Chunks Stripe Unit Size Access Blocked	Okay (OKY) 5 100 Write Through (WT) 3 16K No A Okay (OKY) 5 17256 Write Through (WT) 3 16K No A		
Array A Stripe Order (Channel/SC	SI ID) : 1,0 1,4 1,3		
Physical Device Information			
Channel #1: Initiator at SCSI ID 7 Target on SCSI ID 0 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk SCSI ID : 0 PFA (Yes/No) : No State : Online (ONL)			

Figure 87. Executing ipssend getconfig 1

In this output you can see detailed information about your ServeRAID configuration. If you want information only about the controller itself, then execute this command:

ispsend getconfig 1 ad

You will see output similar to Figure 88.

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend getconfig 1 ad		
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Read Configuration has been initiated for Controller 1		
Controller Information		
Firmware Version : 2.88.10 Boot Block Version : 97139 Date of Configuration Written : 6/25/1999 Controller Configuration ID : Null Config SCSI Channel Description : 3 parallel SCSI wide Host Interface Description : 1 32 bit PCI Initiator IDs (Channel/SCSI ID): 1/7 2/7 3/7 Maximum Physical Devices : 30 Defunct Disk Drive Count : 0 Logical Drives/Offline/Critical: 2/0/0 Rebuild Rate (Low/Medium/High): High Read Ahead : Adaptive Unattended Mode (Yes/No) : No Configuration Update Count : 14 Command Completed Successfully. : 14		

Figure 88. Executing ipssend getconfig 1 ad

To get information about logical drives, execute this command:

ipssend getconfig 1 ld

You will see output similar to Figure 89.

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend geto	config 1 ld	
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Read Configuration has been initiated for Controller 1		
Logical Drive Information		
Write Cache Status Number of Chunks Stripe Unit Size	: 5	
Write Cache Status Number of Chunks Stripe Unit Size	: 5 : 17256 : Write Through (WT)	
Array A Stripe Order (Channel, Command Completed Successfully.	/SCSI ID) : 1,0 1,4 1,3	

Figure 89. Executing ipssend getconfig 1 ld

• From this output you can get all information about the logical drives:

- · Drive status
- RAID level
- Size
- · Write cache status
- Number of chunks
- · Stripe unit size
- Access
- Array

To get detailed information about a physical drive, execute this command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

You will see output similar to Figure 90.

```
[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend getconfig 1 pd
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s)
Read Configuration has been initiated for Controller 1..
Physical Device Information
    Channel #1:
        Initiator at SCSI ID 7
        Target on SCSI ID 0
Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk
                                                 : 0
: No
             SCSI ID
             PFA (Yes/No)
             State : Online (ONL)
Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 8678/17773888
        Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 035168164H
Target on SCSI ID 3
Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk
                                                 : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 035168164E69
             SCSI ID
                                                 : 3
: No
             PFA (Yes/No)
        PFA (Yes/No) : No

State : Online (ONL)

Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 17357/35548048

Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS18Y 0351680EF209

Target on SCSI ID 4

Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk

SCSI ID : 4

DEVICE (Yes (No)) : 4
             PFA (Yes/No)
                                                  : No
                                                  : Online (ONL)
: 8678/17773888
             State
             State
Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 8678/17773888
Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 04206816F8A1
        Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 04206816F8A1
Target on SCSI ID 15
Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Unknown Device
             SCSI ID
                                                 : 15
             PFA (Yes/No)
                                                  : No
                                                  : Stand By (SBY)
: 0/
             State
             Size (in MB)/(in Sectors):
                                                                            Π
                                                 : SDR
                                                                .
GEM200 2
                                                                                1
             Device ID
    Channel #2:
        Initiator at SCSI ID 7
Command Completed Successfully.
```

Figure 90. Executing ipssend getconfig 1 pd

4.2.2 getstatus command

This command is used to retrieve the current status of the IBM ServeRAID controller. The getstatus command has the following syntax:

ipssend getstatus <Controller>

The parameters are explained in Table 4.

Table 4. getstatus command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)

To get the status of the first ServeRAID controller in your IBM Netfinity server, execute the command:

ipssend getstatus 1

You will see output similar to Figure 91.

```
[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend getstatus 1
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Background Command Progress Status for controller 1...
Current/Most Recent Operation : Rebuild
Source logical drive : 1
Target logical drive : 1
Rebuild Rate : High
Status : Successfully Completed
Logical Drive Size (in Stripes): 552192
Number of Remaining Stripes : 0
Percentage Complete : 100.00%
Command Completed Successfully.
```

Figure 91. Executing ipssend getstatus 1

If the ServeRAID controller is currently rebuilding a drive, you will see output similar to Figure 92.

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend getstatus 1
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Background Command Progress Status for controller 1 Current/Most Recent Operation : Rebuild Source logical drive : 1 Target logical drive : 1 Rebuild Rate : High Status : In Progress Logical Drive Size (in Stripes): 3200 Number of Remaining Stripes : 2070
Percentage Complete : 35.31% Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 92. Executing ipssend getstatus 1 during rebuilding of the drive

4.2.3 devinfo command

This command is used to retrieve the current status of the devices connected to the IBM ServeRAID controller. The devinfo command has the following syntax:

ipssend devinfo <Controller> <Channel> <SCSI ID>

The parameters are explained in Table 5.

Table 5. devinfo command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)
Channel	Channel of device (1 to 3)
SCSI ID	SCSI ID of device (0 to 15)

To get the status of a device with SCSI ID 0 on channel 1 on the first ServeRAID controller, execute the command:

ipssend devinfo 1 1 0

You will see output similar to Figure 93.

[root@nf5500 linux]# ipssend devinfo 1 1 0
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Device Information has been initiated for controller 1
Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk
Channel : 1
SCSI ID : 0
PFA (Yes/No) : No
State : Hot Spare (HSP)
Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 8678/17773888
Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 035168164E69
Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 93. Executing ipssend devinfo 1 1 0

If the ServeRAID controller is currently rebuilding a drive, you will see output similar to the one shown in .

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend devinfo 1 1 0
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Device Information has been initiated for controller 1
Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk
Channel : 1
SCSI ID : 0
PFA (Yes/No) : No
State : Rebuild (RBL)
Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 8678/17773888
Device ID : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 035168164E69
Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 94. Executing ipssend devinfo 1 1 0 during rebuilding of the drive

4.2.4 hsrebuild command

This command is used for setting the state of the Hot Swap Rebuild option. The hsrebuild command has the following syntax:

ipssend hsrebuild <Controller> <Options>

The parameters are explained in Table 6.

Table 6. hsrebuild command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)
Options	ON: Enable Hot Swap Rebuild
	?: Display status of Hot Swap Rebuild feature

This command is used to retrieve or set the Hot Swap Rebuild feature. If the Hot Swap Rebuild feature is set to ON, the rebuilding of a drive will start automatically, as soon as a failed drive in the RAID array has been replaced with a new one. This can improve the safety of your data.



- Note -

The Hot Swap Rebuild feature should not be confused with a hot spare drive. A hot spare drive means that a drive is in a waiting state as long as the RAID array is in an Okay state. Once the RAID array becomes in a Critical state, the hot spare drive is enabled and the data from the defunct drive automatically get rebuilt onto the hot spare drive, disregarding the Hot Swap Rebuild setting.

To retrieve information about the Hot Swap Rebuild status on the first ServeRAID controller, execute the command:

ipssend hsrebuild 1 ?

You will see output similar to Figure 95.

```
[root@nf5500 linux]# ipssend hsrebuild 1 ?
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Set Hot Swap Rebuild has been initiated for controller 1...
Hot Swap Rebuild is ON for controller 1.
```

Figure 95. Executing ipssend hsrebuild 1 ?

To enable the Hot Swap Rebuild option, execute the command:

ipssend hsrebuild 1 on

You will see output similar to Figure 96.

[root@nf5500 linux]# ipssend hsrebuild 1 on

```
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Set Hot Swap Rebuild has been initiated for controller 1...
Hot Swap Rebuild is already ON for controller 1.
```

Figure 96. Executing ipssend hsrebuild 1 on

4.2.4.1 setstate command

The setstate command is used to redefine the state of a physical device from the current state to the designated state. The setstate command has the following syntax:

ipssend setstate <Controller> <Channel> <SCSI ID> <New State>

The parameters are explained in Table 7.

Table 7. setstate command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)
Channel	Channel of device (1 to 3)
SCSI ID	SCSI ID of device (0 to 15)

Parameter	Description
New State	EMP (Empty) RDY (Ready) HSP (Hot Spare) SHS (Standby Hot Spare) DDD (Defunct Disk Drive) DHS (Defunct Hot Spare) RBL (Rebuild) SBY (Standby) ONL (Online)



- Stop

Extreme caution must be taken when executing this command! For example, redefining a defunct (DDD) device to online (ONL) without going through a rebuild is extremely dangerous.

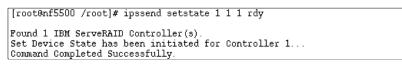
Before changing the state of a physical device, you should check the current status with the following command:

```
ipssend getconfig 1 pd
```

This command will show you all physical devices except empty ones (they are not displayed) on the first IBM ServeRAID controller. For example, if you want to set the state of a device on the first ServeRAID controller, channel 1 and SCSI ID 1 to RDY (Ready), execute the following command:

ipssend setstate 1 1 1 rdy

You will see output similar to Figure 97.





You can verify the change of the device state by executing the command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

4.2.5 synch command

This command is used to synchronize the parity information on redundant logical drives. If the parity information is inconsistent, it will automatically be repaired. The synch command has the following syntax:

ipssend synch <Controller> <Scope> <Scope ID>

The parameters are explained in Table 8.

 Table 8. setstate command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)
Scope	DRIVE for a single logical drive
Scope ID	Number of logical drive (1 to 8)



– Note –

It is recommended that you use this command on a weekly basis (for example as a ${\rm cron}\,job.$

4.2.6 unattended command

This command is used to alter the unattended mode of the ServeRAID controller. The unattended command has the following syntax:

ipssend unattended <Controller> <Options>

The parameters are explained in Table 9.

Table 9. unattended command parameters

Parameter	Description
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)
Options	ON: Enable unattended mode
	OFF: Disable unattended mode
	?: Display status of unattended mode feature

If you want to see the current status of your first ServeRAID controller, execute the following command:

ipssend unattended 1 ?

You will see output similar to Figure 98.

[root@nf5500 /]# ipssend unattended 1 ?

Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Set Unattended Mode has been initiated for controller 1... Unattended Mode is set off.

Figure 98. Executing ipssend unattended 1 ?

If you want to set unattended mode to ON, then execute this command:

ipssend unattended 1 on

4.2.7 rebuild command

The rebuild command starts a rebuild on the designated drive. This command has the following syntax:

ipssend rebuild <Controller> <Channel> <SCSI ID> <New Channel> <New SCSI ID>

The parameters are explained in Table 10.

Table 10.	REBUILD	command	parameters
-----------	---------	---------	------------

Parameter	Description	
Controller	Number of controller (1 to 12)	
Channel	Channel of defunct drive (1 to 3)	
SCSI ID	SCSI ID of Defunct drive (0 to 15)	
New Channel	Channel of new drive (1 to 3)	
New SCSI ID	SCSI ID of new drive (0 to 15)	

This operation is valid for disk arrays containing one or more logical drives in the Critical (CRT) state. For example, if you want to rebuild a defunct drive on SCSI ID 1 on channel 1 in the first ServerRAID controller to the new drive on SCSI ID 0 on the same channel, you would execute the command as follows:

ipssend rebuild 1 1 1 1 0

You will see output similar to Figure 99.

```
[root@nf5500 linux]# ipssend rebuild 1 1 1 1 0
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Rebuild Drive has been initiated for controller 1...
Rebuilding Logical Drive #1:
 ....20% Done
         30% Done
         40% Done
         50% Done
         60% Done
         70% Done
         80% Done
         90% Done
         Done Logical Drive #1
Rebuilding Logical Drive #2:
```

Figure 99. Executing ipssend rebuild 1 1 1 1 0

4.2.8 Replacing a defunct drive

When a physical drive in the RAID array becomes defunct, you will be notified of the failure by a light signal on the drive. You can simulate a defunct drive by executing the following command:

ipssend setstate 1 1 4 ddd

In this case we are simulating that the drive with SCSI ID 4 on channel 1 on the first ServeRAID controller is defunct. The following steps should be taken to replace the defunct drive:

- 1. Physically replace the defunct drive with a good drive.
- 2. The IBM ServeRAID controller will start rebuilding the drive automatically.



- Note

Automatically rebuilding will work only on ServeRAID II and III. Additionally, Enable Hot Spare Rebuild must be set to Enabled!

You can check the progress of rebuilding the logical drives on the first IBM ServeRAID controller with the command:

ipssend getstatus 1

You will see the output similar to Figure 92 on page 81.

If the rebuild is not completed successfully, you will see output similar to the following:

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend getstatus	» 1	
Found 1 TPM Corresport Controller(a)		
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).		
Background Command Progress Status for	controller 1	
Current/Most Recent Operation : Re	ebuild	
Source logical drive : 1		
Target logical drive : 1		
Rebuild Rate : Hi	.gh	
Status : Dr	ive Failed	
Channel Number is : 1		
SCSI ID Number is : 0		
Logical Drive Size (in Stripes): 55	52192	
Number of Remaining Stripes : 30	12692	
	5.18%	
Command Completed Successfully.		

Figure 100. Failed rebuild

4.2.9 Replacing a defunct drive with disabled Hot Spare Rebuild

When you have disabled the Hot Spare Rebuild function in the IBM ServeRAID controller configuration, the following steps should be taken to replace the defunct drive. In our example, the drive with SCSI ID 1 on channel 1 on the first ServeRAID controller is defunct.

- 1. Physically replace the defunct drive with a working one.
- 2. Execute the following command to start rebuilding the drive:

ipssend setstate 1 1 1 rbl

You will see output similar to this:

```
[root@nf5500 /root]# ipssend setstate 1 1 1 rbl
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Set Device State has been initiated for Controller 1...
Command Completed Successfully.
```

Figure 101. Forced rebuild of the defunct drive

You can check the progress of rebuilding the logical drives on the first IBM ServeRAID controller with the command:

ipssend getstatus 1

You will see the output similar to Figure 92 on page 81.

4.2.10 Replacing a defunct drive with a hot spare drive installed

When you have configured the hot spare drive option in your IBM ServeRAID configuration, the defunct physical drive is automatically rebuilt on this hot spare drive. Follow these steps to replace the defunct physical drive and set it as a hot spare drive:

 You find out that there is a defunct physical drive in your RAID array on the first ServeRAID controller. In our example, the physical drive on SCSI ID 1 on channel 1 was defined as the hot spare drive. You can check this by executing the command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

You will see output similar to Figure 102.

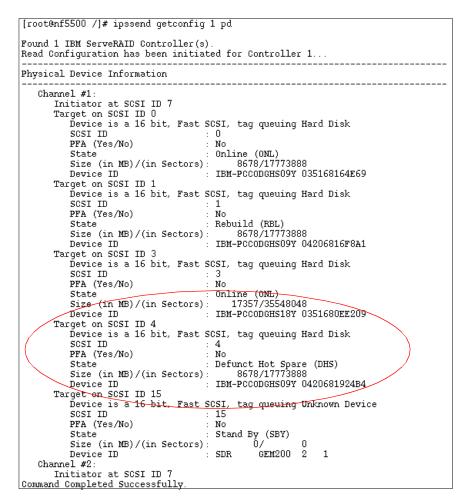


Figure 102. After failing the drive in RAID array

As you can see, the hot spare drive is already rebuilding and the defunct drive is in Defunct Hot Spare (DHS) state.

2. Remove the defunct drive from the server. In our example this is the drive with SCSI ID 4 on channel 1.



3. Set the state of the drive to Empty (EMP) with the command:

```
ipssend setstate 1 1 4 emp
```

You will see output similar to Figure 103.

```
[root@nf5500 /]# ipssend setstate 1 1 4 emp
```

```
Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s).
Set Device State has been initiated for Controller 1...
Command Completed Successfully.
```

Figure 103. Setting the DHS to EMP

You can check the result of this operation by executing the command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

You will see output similar to Figure 104.

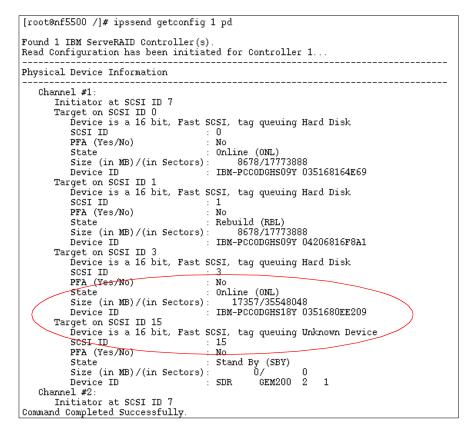


Figure 104. After removing defunct drive

As you can see, there is no entry for the defunct drive anymore.

- 4. Insert the new drive into the server. In our example this will be inserted at the same place as the defunct drive.
- 5. Set the state of that drive to Ready with the command:

ipssend setstate 1 1 4 rdy

You will see output similar to Figure 105.

[root@nf5500 /]# ipssend setstate 1 1 4 rdy Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Set Device State has been initiated for Controller 1... Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 105. Setting the new drive state to RDY

With setting the state to Ready (RDY), the drive is started.



- Note

All new drives must be first set to ready (RDY).

You can check the result of this operation by executing the command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

You will see output similar to Figure 106.

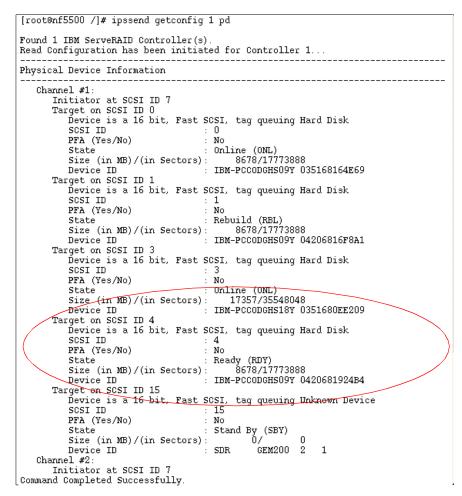


Figure 106. After setting the state to RDY

As you can see, the new drive appears as a Ready (RDY) device, in our example under SCSI ID 4 on channel 1.

Change the state of the new drive to the Hot Spare (HSP) with the command:

ipssend setstate 1 1 4 hsp

You will see output similar to Figure 107.

[root@nf5500 /]# ipssend setstate 1 1 4 hsp

Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Set Device State has been initiated for Controller 1... Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 107. Changing the state to HSP

You can check the result of this operation by executing the command:

ipssend getconfig 1 pd

You will see output similar to Figure 108.

[root@nf5500 /]# ipssend getconfig 1 pd Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller(s). Read Configuration has been initiated for Controller 1.. Physical Device Information Channel #1: Initiator at SCSI ID 7 Target on SCSI ID 0 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk SCSI ID : 0 PFA (Yes/No) : No : Online (ONL) : 8678/17773888 State Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 035168164E69 Device ID Target on SCSI ID 1 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk SCSI ID : 1 PFA (Yes/No) : No : Rebuild (RBL) : 8678/17773888 State Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 04206816F8A1 Device ID Target on SCSI ID 3 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk : 3 : No SCSI ID PFA (Yes/No) : Online (ONL) : 17357/35548048 State Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): Device ID Target on SCSI ID 4 : IBM-PCCODGHS18Y 0351680EE209 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Hard Disk : 4 SCSI ID PFA (Yes/No) : No : Hot Spare (HSP)): 8678/17773888 : IBM-PCCODGHS09Y 0420681924B4 State Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): Device ID Target on SCSI ID 15 Device is a 16 bit, Fast SCSI, tag queuing Unknown Device : 15 SCSI ID PFA (Yes/No) : No : Stand By (SBY) : 0/ State Size (in MB)/(in Sectors): 0 : SDR GEM200 2 1 Device ID Channel #2: Initiator at SCSI ID 7 Command Completed Successfully.

Figure 108. After setting the state to HSP

Congratulations! You have just installed a new hot spare drive and it is now ready to use.

4.2.11 Using the ipsmon command

The ipsmon command is part of the ipsutils.rpm package. It can be used to monitor the current status of your IBM ServeRAID controller. The ipsmon command has the following syntax:

ipsmon <-f:filename> <-s>

The parameters are explained in Table 11.

Table 11. ipsmon parameters	Table 11.	ipsmon	parameters
-----------------------------	-----------	--------	------------

Parameter	Description
-f:filename	Specifies a filename to report messages default filename is ipsmon.log
-S	Specifies if messages should only be logged to the standard output device

If you want to monitor the IBM ServeRAID controller activity on the standard console execute the command

```
ipsmon -s
```

You will see the output similar to Figure 109.

```
[root@nf5500 /root]# ipsmon -s
```

```
Licensed Material - Property of IBM Corporation

IBM ServeRAID Controller Monitor v3.50.17

Copyright (C) IBM Corporation 1996 - 1999

All Rights Reserved

US Government Restricted Rights - Use, Duplication, or Disclosure

Restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corporation

Found 1 IBM ServeRAID Controller (s)

Oct 12 1999 12:14:04 EDT INF000:A1C-SID-- No controller errors detected

Oct 12 1999 12:14:09 EDT INF001:A1C-SID-- rebuild started
```

Figure 109. ipsmon command

4.2.12 Using the ipsadm command

Using the <code>ipsadm</code> command you can remotely administer your IBM ServeRAID controller from any WIN32 based workstation. The WIN32 client can be downloaded from the following site:

http://www.developer.ibm.com/welcome/netfinity/serveraid.html

Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities 95

From that site you can download the following files:

• ips-100.tgz

This file contains the kernel patch for the 2.2.x kernel, which enables the support for IBM ServeRAID adapter in those kernels.

• ipsutils.rpm

This file contains the Linux utilities for IBM ServeRAID SCSI adapter

• 009n012.exe.

This file contains the WIN32 Administration Client, which can be used to remote configure and monitor the ServeRAID adapter used in Linux installation.

By starting the executable file on any WIN32-based workstation, you will create the installation diskette for the IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitoring Program. After you have created the diskette, execute the file setup.exe from the diskette. This will install the IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitoring Program on your WIN32-based workstation. You run the program by starting IBM ServeRAID administration. You will see a window similar to Figure 110.

	AID Administration ar	nd Monitor		_ 🗆 ×
Options Advanc	ed <u>H</u> elp			
	* 2 *			
		Channel 1	Channel 2 - Channel 2	- Channel 3 -
Adapter 1	Log Drv 1			
Adapter 2	Log Drv 2			
Adapter 3	Log Drv 3			
Adapter 4	Log Drv 4			
Adapter 5	Log Drv 5			
Adapter 6	Log Drv 6			
Adapter 7	Log Drv 7			
Adapter 8	Log Drv 8			
Tue, Oct 12, 1	1000 10 45 04			
	Adapters Installed			
, Ready			Tue, Oct 12,	1999 12:45:45 🏑

Figure 110. IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitor window

To be able to remotely access the IBM ServeRAID controller of the IBM Netfinity server running Linux, you need to start the ipsadm utility on that server. ipsadm is basically a background process (daemon) listening for TCP/IP connections on port 1087 on one side and interacting with the IBM ServeRAID controller on the other side. So it basically accepts commands from the IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitoring Program and passes them to the IBM ServeRAID controller. The <code>ipsadm</code> command has the following syntax:

```
ipsadm [-p:port#] [-f:filename] [-s:security file] [-d] [-er]
```

The parameters are described in Table 12.

Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities 97

Table 12. ipsadm parameters

Parameter	Description
-p:port#	Defines a port number for server communication
-f:filename	Specifies a filename to report messages
-s:security file	Specifies a filename to check for valid username:password
-d	Disables logging information to the display
-er	Displays all errors and warnings

In our example, we created a password file /etc/ips.pwd with the following entries:

```
nf5500:password
```

<code>nf5500</code> is the user ID for accessing the IBM ServeRAID controller and the password is set to "password". To start the <code>ipsadm</code> utility, execute the command:

```
ipsadm -s:/etc/ips/pwd
```

In our example, we used the previously created password file. You will see output similar to Figure 111.

[root@nf5500 /root]# ipsadm -s:/etc/ips.pwd Licensed Material - Property of IBM Corporation IBM ServeRAID Administration & Monitoring Server Utility v3.50.17 Copyright (C) IBM Corporation 1996 - 1998 All Rights Reserved US Government Restricted Rights - Use, Duplication, or Disclosure Restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corporation TCP/IP networking protocol initiated on port number 1087. Using /etc/ips.pwd for username/password file. Security enabled. Not logging to a file. Tue Oct 12 12:18:39 EDT 1999 --> IBM ServeRAID Administration Server started Tue Oct 12 12:18:39 EDT 1999 --> Bind to socket successful. Tue Oct 12 12:18:39 EDT 1999 --> Listening for connection...

Figure 111. Starting IPSADM utility

To remotely connect to the IBM ServeRAID controller, follow these steps:

1. Start the IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitoring Program and select **Options.** You will see a window similar to Figure 112.

💐 IBM ServeRAID	Administration and Monitor
Options Advanced	Help
<u>N</u> etwork Settings	
<u>G</u> eneral Options	
Alert Options	
Adapters 3-16	Channel 1 Channel 2 Channel 3
Adapter 1	Log Drv 1
Adapter 2	Log Drv 2
Adapter 3	Log Drv 3
Adapter 4	Log Drv 4
Adapter 5	Log Drv 5
Adapter 6	Log Drv 6
Adapter 7	Log Drv 7
Adapter 8	Log Drv 8
Tue, Oct 12, 1999 No ServeRAID Ada	
Ready	Tue , Oct 12 , 1999 12:46:38 //

Figure 112. Selecting Network Settings

2. Select Network Settings... You will see a window similar to Figure 113.

Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities 99

Network Settings	×
C Stand-alone	Connect
Client/Server	Cancel
Client/Server Settings	
User Name: Passwor	d:
TCP/IP Add	Delete
Host Name:Port Number (Optional)	
	•

Figure 113. Network settings

- 3. Select the option **Client/Server** as you can see in Figure 113.
- 4. Enter the host name or the IP address of the IBM Netfinity server running the ipsadm utility in the Host Name:Port Number(Optional) field. The port number is optional and only needs to be supplied if you changed the default port on the server side. Click **Add** to add the host. You will see a window similar to Figure 114.

	×
٩	9.24.105.208:1087 added. Click connect to attach to this host

Figure 114. Host added

5. Click **OK** to return to the Network Settings dialog. You will see a window similar to Figure 115.

Network Settings	×
C Stand-alone	Connect
Client/Server	Cancel
Client/Server Settings	
User Name: Passwor nf5500	rd:
TCP/IP Add	Delete
Host Name:Port Number (Optional)	
9.24.105.208:1087	_

Figure 115. After the host is added

6. Enter the user name you defined in your password file in the User Name field and the respective password in the Password field. Click **Connect** to connect to the server with the IBM ServeRAID controller. You will see a window similar to Figure 116.

Chapter 4. Using the ServeRAID utilities 101

😫 IBM ServeRAID Administration and Monitor				
Options Advanced	i <u>H</u> elp			
	<u>* 2</u> E			
		Channel 1	- Channel 2 -	Channel 3
Adapter 1 🗖	Log Drv 1 💻	ONL 🗖 A		
Adapter 2	Log Drv 2 💻	RDY 🗖		
Adapter 3	Log Drv 3			
Adapter 4	Log Drv 4	ONL 🗖 A		
Adapter 5	Log Drv 5	ONL 🗖 A		
Adapter 6	Log Drv 6			
Adapter 7	Log Drv 7			
Adapter 8	Log Drv 8	Initiator	Initiator	Initiator
Tue , Oct 12 , 19 Adapter 1: No Err	rors Detected			
Connected to remote	e host 9.24.105.208 o	n port 1087 using TC	P/IF Tue , Oct 12	, 1999 12:51:19 //,

Figure 116. Connected to the server

Congratulations! You can now manage you IBM ServeRAID controller remotely.

If you want to automatically start up <code>ipsadm</code> at system bootup, you can add the following command line to the init script <code>/sbin/init.d/boot.local</code>. Open the file with a regular text editor, and add the following line at the end of the file:

ipsadm -d -s:/etc/ips/pwd &

The administration and monitoring server will now be started on system bootup without any manual intervention.

Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System

If you connect two or more computers to a network, they can share information and resources. However, these computers need to "talk in the same language" to be able to establish a connection. This "language" is called a network protocol. Today the most popular communication protocol is TCP/IP. This is the protocol that is being used on the Internet and in many local area networks as well.

Hosts in a TCP/IP network communicate with each other by using unique IP addresses. These addresses consist of four 8-bit numbers (octets) that are divided by dots. For example, host A has the address 192.168.99.1, while host B uses 122.68.29.5.

However, this addressing scheme is not very comprehensible to human beings and it is almost impossible to memorize a number of hosts by their IP addresses. Therefore a naming scheme has been invented.

Each host has a host name (for example fred) and belongs to a certain domain (for example snake-oil.com). Domains can be organized in a hierarchical fashion and can consist of different subdomains (for example marketing.snake-oil.com). The combination of a host name and its domain name is called a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) (for example fred.marketing.snake-oil.com). Since domains are hierarchical, it is possible to have more hosts with the same host name in different subdomains. Therefore, fred.marketing.snake-oil.com can be a different host from fred.management.snake-oil.com. If you want these hosts to be addressable from the Internet, you need to register your domain name with a central registry. There are several top-level domains, such as .com, .org or .net. In addition to these generic top-level domains, each country in the world has its own country code as the top-level domain. For example, Germany has .de, Denmark has .dk, and Finland uses .fi.

Since the hosts internally still use their IP addresses to communicate, there needs to be a mapping between host names and the corresponding IP address. There are two ways this can be implemented.

All host names of a network, including their IP addresses, are put into a static text file. This file has to be copied on each host that wants to communicate with the others by name. As soon as a host has been added or removed from the network, or an IP address or host name has changed, and the host files on all computers have to be adjusted accordingly. This can get very tedious, if the number of hosts reaches a certain amount.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

This is where the Domain Name System (DNS) steps in. The following description of DNS is very simplified, but it should give you a rough picture of what DNS is all about.

Instead of maintaining a separate host file on each machine, there is a central server that carries a list of all hosts and IP addresses of its domain. All clients now send their host name resolution request to this central server instead of looking in a local table. The name server will look up the requested host name and return the respective IP address. The opposite is also possible: the client can also ask for a host name that belongs to a certain IP address. If a client asks for an IP address of another domain, the local domain name server will forward the request to the next name server above in its hierarchy, if it cannot answer the request by itself. Therefore changes to the table of host names have to be made at one central point only rather than on all participants of the network.

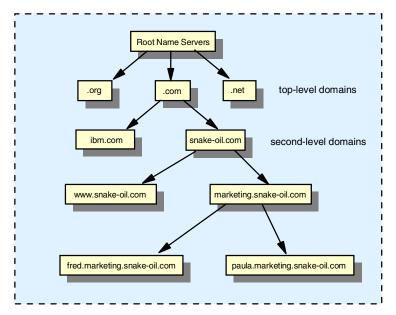


Figure 117. Internet domain hierarchy

This chapter will describe how to set up a name server for a local domain and how to maintain a host list for this domain.

5.1 Installation of software

The server that is supposed to be the DNS server needs to have a working TCP/IP network connection to the other hosts in its network first. The program that is responsible for this service is called named and belongs to the software package bind, which is coordinated by Paul Vixie for The Internet Software Consortium. There are two major versions of bind: bind4 and bind8. We will focus on the new version bind8, because it is more secure and is supposed to replace bind4 in the future. Most Linux distributions already contain a precompiled and preconfigured package for bind8.



- Note -

The package bind8 has been split up into two separate packages in SuSE Linux 6.3; bind8, which contains the actual server program, and bindutil, which contains the utilities such as nslookup, dig and host. We recommend that you install both on a server. A client needs only the bindutil package.

First make sure, that the package is actually installed. In SuSE Linux, you can use the RPM package manager to query the database of installed packages by entering the following command:

```
rpm -q bind8
```

If the package is already installed, RPM will return the version and build number of this package:

```
bind8-8.1.2-60
```

If it is not installed, you will receive the following message:

package bind8 is not installed.

You will then have to install this package first. Please refer to 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51 for how to install software packages. The package bind8 is located in series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News). Quit YaST to return to the command line after installing the package.

5.2 DNS sample configuration

Configuring DNS can be very complex, depending on the intended functionality. Covering this in depth is beyond the scope of this chapter. We

Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System 105

will therefore focus on very a simplified example and recommend that you take a look at the very informative DNS how-to at:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/DNS-HOWTO.html

or at /usr/doc/howto/en/DNS-HOWTO.gz on your local filesystem for further info on DNS and bind.

We will construct a simple example: The company Snake Oil Ltd. wants to set up a local DNS server for their internal network (the internal IP address range is 192.168.99.xxx/24, a Class C network). They chose snake-oil.com as their local domain name. The network is also connected to the Internet. The name server will be configured to answer all requests about the local (internal) snake-oil.com domain and forward all other requests to the ISP's name server (ns.bigisp.com, fictional IP address 155.3.12.1) as a caching name server.

We begin with a simple example. At first the local DNS will be configured to act as a caching-only name server. This means that it forwards all requests to the ISP's name server(s) (forwarders) and caches all answers for further requests from its clients. This reduces the network traffic on the outside line.

Put the following lines in the /etc/resolv.conf file:

```
search snake-oil.com
nameserver 127.0.0.1
```

This will make sure that the server itself will use its local name server for host name resolution.

In SuSE Linux, you can use YaST to modify this entry. Choose **System** administration -> Network configuration -> Configuration nameserver. Enter the IP address 127.0.0.1 and your domain. To enter this dialog directly from the command line, enter the following command:

yast --mask nameserver --autoexit

The name server's main configuration file is /etc/named.conf. Most distributions ship with a very detailed example configuration file, you might want to save this for further reference. We will create a new file from scratch. Open up a text editor and create a new /etc/named.conf according to the following example:

```
options {
        directory "/var/named";
pid-file "/var/named/slave/named.pid";
        listen-on { any; };
         forward only;
         forwarders { 155.3.12.1; };
         sortlist {
                  { localhost; localnets; };
{ localnets; };
         };
};
logging {
         category lame-servers { null; };
         category cname { null; };
};
zone "localhost" IN {
        type master;
file "localhost.zone";
        check-names fail;
        allow-update { none; };
};
zone "0.0.127.in-addr.arpa" IN {
        type master;
         file "127.0.0.zone";
        check-names fail;
        allow-update { none; };
};
```

Replace the IP address in the ${\tt forwarders}$ field with your ISP's name server IP address.

You also need to create the following /var/named/localhost.zone file:

\$ORIGIN localhost. @	1D IN SOA	@ root (42 3H 15M 1W 1D)	; serial (d. adams) ; refresh ; retry ; expiry ; minimum
	1D IN NS 1D IN A	@ 127.0.0.1	

Furthermore, create a file /var/named/127.0.0.zone with the following content:

Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System 107

\$ORIGIN 0.0.127.in-ad	ldr.arpa.	
@	1D IN SOA	localhost. root.localhost. (42 ; serial (d. adams) 3H ; refresh 15M ; retry 1W ; expiry 1D) ; minimum
1	1D IN NS 1D IN PTR	localhost. localhost.

Your network clients should all be configured to query the local DNS server's IP address instead of your ISP's name server.

You can now start the server with the command:

rcnamed start.

Check /var/log/messages for the startup messages. The name server should now resolve DNS queries from its clients by forwarding them to the ISP's name server. You can verify this with the commands host <somehostname> and nslookup.

If you want the name server to be started at the next system reboot, set the variable <code>start_nameD</code> in /etc/rc.config to "yes". See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for how to do this.

In the following step, this server should now also act as a primary name server for the local domain snake-oil.com. Stop the name server with renamed stop and edit the file /etc/named.conf so that it looks like the following example:

```
options {
        directory "/var/named";
        pid-file "/var/named/slave/named.pid";
        listen-on { any; };
        forward only;
        forwarders {9.24.106.15;};
        sortlist {
                 { localhost; localnets; };
{ localnets; };
        };
};
logging {
        category lame-servers { null; };
        category cname { null; };
};
zone "." {
        type hint;
        file "root.hint";
};
zone "localhost" IN {
        type master;
        file "localhost.zone";
        check-names fail;
        allow-update { none; };
};
zone "0.0.127.in-addr.arpa" IN {
        type master;
        file "127.0.0.zone";
        check-names fail;
        allow-update { none; };
};
zone "snake-oil.com" {
       type master;
       file "snake-oil.zone";
};
zone "99.168.192.IN-ADDR.APRA" {
       type master;
       file "snake-oil.rev";
};
```

We have now added the zone files (the databases) needed for our local domain "snake-oil.com". The file /var/named/snake-oil.zone is responsible for the mapping of host names to IP addresses.

Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System 109

; ; Zone file for	snake-c	oil.com	
; @ IN	SOA	199910011 ; 8H ; 2H ; 1W ;	hostmaster.snake-oil.com. (serial, todays date + todays serial # refresh, seconds retry, seconds expire, seconds minimum, seconds
;	NS	ns :	Inet Address of name server
	MX		Primary Mail Exchanger
	MX	, ,	m. ; Secondary Mail Exchanger
;		5 1	
localhost	A	127.0.0.1	
gw	A	192.168.99.1	
ns	A	192.168.99.2	
fred	A	192.168.99.3	
mail	A	192.168.99.4	
ftp	A	192.168.99.5	
www	A	192.168.99.6	

You should also create the zone file /var/named/snake-oil.rev. This is necessary for reverse name lookups, for example, if you need to resolve an IP address to its host name.

@ IN	n soa NS	ns.snake-oil.com. hostmaster.snake-oli.com. (199910011 ; Serial, todays date + todays serial 8H ; Refresh 2H ; Retry 1W ; Expire 1D) ; Minimum TTL ns.snake-oil.com.
1	PTR	gw.snake-oil.com.
2	PTR	ns.snake-oil.com.
3	PTR	fred.snake-oil.com.
4	PTR	mail.snake-oil.com.
5	PTR	ftp.snake-oil.com.
6	PTR	www.snake-oil.com.

Now let the name server reload its configuration again by running renamed restart. Have a look at the messages in /var/log/messages. If everything went well, you should see messages similar to the following:

```
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: starting
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: cache zone "" (IN) loaded (serial 0)
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: master zone "localhost" (IN) loaded (serial 42)
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: master zone "0.0.127.in-addr.arpa" (IN) loaded (serial
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: master zone "snake-oil.com" (IN) loaded (serial 199910
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: master zone "99.168.192.IN-ADDR.APRA" (IN) loaded (serial
199910011)
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: listening on [127.0.0.1].53 (lo)
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: listening on [9.24.105.210].53 (eth0)
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14870]: Forwarding source address is [0.0.0.0].1041
Oct 26 18:03:20 ns named[14871]: Ready to answer queries.
```

Your name server should now correctly resolve host names for the snake-oil domain as well.

5.3 Configuration tips

Use the listen-on directive in the options section of the named.conf file. For each interface a name server listens on, a pair of filehandles is opened. On a busy name server, saving every filehandle is a big win.

Check the /var/log/messages file from time to time for errors. Named is pretty verbose in its error messages.

If you are constantly adding, removing or just making modifications to your zone records, you might want to have a look at the nsupdate tool, which also belongs to the bind8 package.

Chapter 5. DNS - Domain Name System 111

Chapter 6. Samba

If you look this word up in a dictionary, Samba is defined as a Brazilian dance, but Samba on Linux is something completely different. Samba is an implementation of a Server Message Block (SMB) protocol server that can be run on almost every variant of UNIX in existence. Samba is an open source project, just like Linux. The entire code is written in C so it is easily portable to all flavors of UNIX. Samba is a tool for the peaceful coexistence of UNIX and Windows on the same network on the level of file and print sharing over the NetBIOS protocol. It allows UNIX systems to show up in a Windows "Network Neighborhood" without causing a mess. With Samba, UNIX servers are acting like any other Windows server, offering their resources to the SMB clients. Recently SMB was renamed by Microsoft to Common Internet File System (CIFS).

6.1 What can you do with Samba?

- With Samba, a Linux server can act as a file/print server for Windows clients. It can replace expensive Windows NT file/print server in this role, creating a less expensive solution.
- Samba can act as a NetBIOS name server (NBNS) in a Windows world, where it is referred to as Windows Internet Name Service (WINS).
- Samba can participate in NetBIOS browsing and master browser elections.
- Samba can provide a gateway for the synchronizing of UNIX and Windows NT passwords.
- The Samba client software enables you to access any shared directory or printer on a Windows NT server or another Samba server and makes it possible for other UNIX machines to access Windows NT files.
- Using the Samba File System (SMBFS) you can mount any share from a Windows NT server or Samba server in your directory structure (this is only available on Linux).

6.2 Setting up Samba

You can check if the Samba package is installed by running the following rpm command on the command line or by using YaST as described in 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51:

rpm -q samba

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

If Samba is not installed, please follow the instructions on how to install packages on SuSE Linux. The samba package is located in package series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News). Quit YaST to return to the command line after installing the package.

6.2.1 Configuring Samba

In this section we will explain how to configure Samba so it can participate as a file/print server in an existing Windows network or just as a stand-alone file/print server for Windows and Linux clients.

Before you can start using Samba, you need to configure the smb.conf file. This file is the heart of the Samba server. When Samba is installed on SuSE Linux, this configuration file is installed here:

/etc/smb.conf

The Samba configuration file smb.conf is divided into two main sections:

- 1. Global Settings these parameters affect the connection parameters.
- 2. Share Definitions these define your shares. A share is a directory on the server that is accessible over the network and shared among users. This section has three subsections:
 - a. Homes in this subsection you define the user's home directories.
 - b. Printers in this subsection you define the available printers.
 - c. Other Shares this subsection can have multible entry. Create one for each share you want to define.

In the following sections we will describe how to modify smb.conf to efficiently and simply use Samba as a file/print server. We will cover only the basic parameters. See Chapter 8, "Samba PC Server" in the SuSE manual for more documentation about Samba.

Another good resource is the manual page for smb.conf(5) or the Web site of the Samba project:

http://www.samba.org

The preinstalled configuration file already contains a few commented examples. You can start off by modifying these to fit your needs.

6.2.1.1 Setting the NetBIOS parameters

The NetBIOS parameters are part of Global Settings. When you open your smb.conf file, you will see something similar to this:

Table 13 describes parameters that define the NetBIOS naming of your Samba server.

Table 13.	NetBIOS parameter	s
-----------	-------------------	---

Parameter	Description
netbios name	This is the name by which the Samba server is known on the network. This parameter has the same meaning as the Windows NT computer name. If you do not specify it, it will default to the server's host name.
workgroup	This parameter specifies in which Windows NT domain or workgroup the Samba server will participate. It is equivalent to the Windows NT domain or workgroup name.
server string	This is the description string of the Samba server. It has the same role as the Windows NT description field.

6.2.1.2 Global printing settings

In your smb.conf file ,you will see something similar to this:

```
load printers = yes
printcap name = /etc/printcap
printing = bsd
```

These parameters are described in Table 14.

Table 14. Printing parameters

Parameter	Description
load printers	This parameter defines if Samba should load all printers from the file /etc/printcap for browsing.
printcap name	This parameter lets you configure the location of the printcap file. The default value is /etc/printcap.
printing	This parameter tells Samba what printing style to use on your server. SuSE Linux uses the BSD printing style by default.

Chapter 6. Samba 115

6.2.1.3 Global security settings

In your smb.conf you will see something similar to this:

```
security = user
; password server = <NT-Server-Name>
encrypt passwords = yes
smb passwd file = /etc/smbpasswd
```

These parameters are described in Table 15.

Table 15. Security parameters

Parameter	Description
security	This parameter has four possible values: share, user, server, domain
password server	At the server or domain security level, this is the server that will be used for authorization. Enter the server's NetBIOS name here.
encrypt passwords	When setting this parameter to yes, you enable Samba to use the encrypted password protocol, which is used in Windows NT (starting with Service Pack 3) and Windows 98. This is needed to communicate with those clients.
smb passwd file	This parameter tells Samba where encrypted passwords are saved. By default, it will use /etc/smbpasswd.

The security modes are as follows:

- Share in this security mode, clients need to supply only the password for the resource. This mode of security is the default for the Windows 95 file/print server. It is not recommended to be used in UNIX environments, because it violates the UNIX security scheme.
- 2. User user/password validation is done on the server that is offering the resource. This mode is most widely used.
- 3. Server the user/password validation is done on the specified authentication server. This server can be a Windows NT server or another Samba server.
- 4. Domain this security level is basically the same as server security, with the exception that the Samba server becomes a member of a Windows NT domain. In this case the Samba server can also participate in such things as trust relationships.

Because Windows NT 4.0 Service Pack 3 or later, Windows 95 with the latest patches, and Windows 98 use encrypted passwords for accessing NetBIOS resources, you need to enable your Samba server to use the encrypted passwords. Before you start the Samba server for the first time you need to create a Samba encrypted passwords file. This can be done with the mksmbpasswd.sh script. The recommended way is to first create the user accounts in Linux and then create the Samba password file with the command:

cat /etc/passwd | mksmbpasswd.sh > /etc/smbpasswd

This creates an empty Samba password file from the Linux password file. It contains all local users, but not their passwords.



Note

Use the same filename you specified for creating the Samba password file in the smb.conf configuration to tell the Samba server where the password file is.

By default the passwords for the Samba users are undefined. Before any connection is made to the Samba server, users need to create their passwords.

Now you need to specify the password for all users. If you are changing or specifying the password for the user, you can do this by executing the command:

smbpasswd -U username

You will see a window similar to the following:

```
[root@nf5000 /]# /usr/bin/smbpasswd -U user
New SMB password:
Retype new SMB password:
Password changed for user user.
[root@nf5000 /]# []
```

Figure 118. Specifying the password for Samba user



Note

Anyone with access to the /usr/bin/smbpasswd can change passwords for the Samba users.

Chapter 6. Samba 117

Another way is to have each Samba user change the password for himself, by remotely connecting to the Samba server and executing the command:

smbpasswd

The output will be similar to Figure 118. If a Samba user already has defined a password, he will need to type in the old password before he can change it.

If you want to add a Samba server user later, you can do this with the following command:

smbpasswd -a username password

This will add a new user to the Samba password file.



- Note -

You have to be logged on as root if you want to manage other users. If you are logged on as a user, you can only change your own password. The smbpasswd utility uses the location of the password file from the smb.conf configuration file.

6.2.1.4 Global name resolution settings

In your smb.conf you will see something similar to:

```
name resolve order = wins lmhosts bcast
wins support = yes
; wins server = w.x.y.z
```

The parameters are described in Table 16.

Table 16. Name resolution parameters

Parameter	Description		
name resolve order	With this parameter you specify how Samba resolves NetBIOS names into IP addresses. The preferred value is wins lmhosts bcast.Refer to the manual page of smb.conf (5) for more information.		
wins support	If this option is enabled, Samba will also act as a WINS server.		
wins server	With this parameter, you tell Samba which WINS server to use.		



Samba can act as a WINS server or a WINS client, but not both. So only one of the parameters (wins support or wins server) can be set at the same time. If you specify the IP address of WINS server, then wins support must be set to "no".

6.2.1.5 Creating shares

Note -

In the previous sections we have explained how to prepare general configuration parameters. But a Samba server is useful only when it offers resources to the users. In this section we will explain how to create a share. A simple share definition section in smb.conf looks similar to this:

```
[redbook]
  comment = Redbook files
  path = /redbook
  browseable = yes
  printable = no
  writable = yes
  write list = @users
```

We explain the most important parameters for creating a share in Table 17.

Table 17. Share parameters

Parameter	Description
comment	This describes the function of this share.
admin users	This parameter is used to specify the users who have administrative privileges for this share. When they access the share, they perform all operations as user root.
path	Defines the path to the local directory you are sharing.
browseable	If this parameter is set to yes, you can see this share when you are browsing the resources on the Samba server. The value can be yes or no.
printable	This parameter specifies, if the share is a print share. The value can be yes or no.
write list	Users specified in this list have write access to the share. If the name begins with @, it refers to a group name.
writable	This parameter specifies if the share is writeable. The value can be yes or no.

Chapter 6. Samba 119

Parameter	Description
read list	Users specified in this list have read access to the share. If the name begins with @ it refers to a group name.
read only	If this is set to yes, the share is read only. The value can be yes or no.
valid users	This parameter specifies which users can access the share.

You can easily set up a new share by using this basic set of parameters. Each share definition starts with the share name in square brackets "[]". You can specify the values for the share parameters below this name.

6.2.1.6 Share permissions

Although you can control the share permissions with share parameters, UNIX permissions are applied before the user can access files on the share. So you need to take care of the UNIX permissions, so that the user has access to the share directory under UNIX.

When a user creates a new file on the shared directory, the default create mask for files is 0744, and the default create mask for directories is 0755. If you can also force the use of a certain creation mask. The parameters necessary for this are explained in Table 18.

Parameter	Description
create mask	This parameter assigns which permissions should be used when creating a new file.
directory mask	This parameter defines the permissions used for the creation of directories.

Table 18. Create mask parameters

6.2.1.7 Creating shares for home directories

Samba has a special share section called [homes]. This share definition is used for all home directories, so you do not need to create separate shares for each user.

When a client requests a connection to a file share, existing file shares are scanned. If a match is found, that share is used. If no match is found, the requested share is treated as a user name and validated by security. If the name exists and the password is correct, a share with that name is created by cloning the [homes] section. The home share definition uses the same

parameters as a normal share definition. The following is an example of a home share definition in the smb.conf configuration file:

```
[homes]
comment = Home Directories
path = %H
valid users = %S
browseable = no
writable = yes
create mode = 0700
directory mode = 0700
```

As you can see, we used some special variables in this definition, which are explained in Table 19.

Table 19. Variable description

Parameter	Description
%H	This variable represents the home directory of the current user.
%S	The name of the current service, which is equal to the user name in the case of home share.

As you can see in the example, we have used special creation masks for the creation of files and directories, by forcing all new files or directories to be accessible by the owner of this home directory only.

6.2.1.8 Creating a printer share

A Samba server uses the same procedure for printer shares as for the home shares. After all share definitions and user names are tested against the requested share name and the matched definition is still not found, Samba will search for a printer with that name (if the [printers] section exists). If the match is found in the printer definitions, that [printers] share section will be cloned with the name of requested service, which is really a printer name. The following is an example of a printer definition in the smb.conf configuration file:

```
[printers]
comment = All Printers
path = /var/spool/samba
browseable = no
# Set public = yes to allow user 'guest account' to print
guest ok = no
writable = no
printable = yes
create mask = 0700
```

Chapter 6. Samba 121

As you can see, the [printers] section is just like any other share definition. When a user prints, he basically copies the data into a spool directory; after that, the data will be handled by the local printing system. The only difference between a printer share and other share definitions is, that the parameter printable is set to "yes". This means that a user can write a spool file to the directory specified in this share definition. If the share is printable, then it is also writable by default.

6.2.2 Starting and stopping the Samba server

You can start the Samba server by executing the command:

rcsmb start

As you can see in the process table, two daemons are started: smbd and nmbd. smbd is the actual Samba server and nmbd is WINS server.

Samba server can be stopped by executing the command:

rcsmb stop

Whenever you make modifications to the smb.conf configuration file, you need to restart the Samba server. This can be done by executing the following command:

rcsmb restart

6.2.3 Starting Samba as startup service

You can configure your boot process so that Samba will be started at bootup time.

To activate this feature, you simply have to set the variable START_SMB in /etc/rc.config to yes. You can either do this manually, or by using YaST as described in 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70.

The next time the Linux server is restarted, the Samba server will be started automatically.

6.2.4 Using SWAT

The Samba Web Administration Tool (SWAT) allows the remote configuration of the smb.conf configuration file through a Web browser. That means you can make configurations in a GUI-like environment, which makes it much easier for administrators who are not used to using a command line. SWAT itself is a small Web server and CGI scripting application that is designed to run from inetd to provide access to the smb.conf configuration file. Authorized users with the root password can configure the smb.conf configuration file via Web pages. SWAT also places help links to all configurable options on every page, which help the administrator to understand the effect of the different parameters.

Before using SWAT you must check the following.

1. The file /etc/services should have the following line (this is the default in SuSE Linux):

swat 901/tcp

2. The file /etc/inetd.conf must contain the following line:

swat stream tcp nowait.400 root /usr/sbin/swat swat

In SuSE Linux, this line already exists, but is deactivated with a comment sign (#). Just remove this sign from the beginning of the line and you are all set.

If you made any modifications to one of those files, you need to restart inetd. This can be done by executing the following command:

rcinetd restart

You are now ready to use SWAT. To start SWAT, point your favorite Web browser to the IP address of your Samba server on port 901, as you can see in Figure 119.

Chapter 6. Samba 123

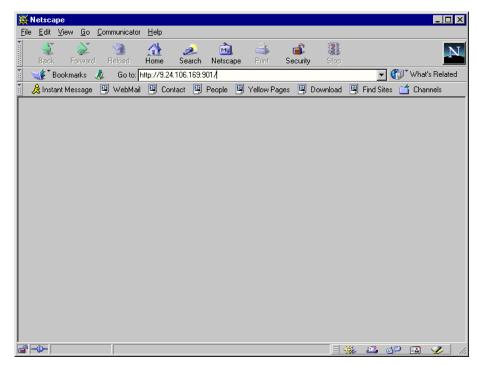


Figure 119. Starting SWAT

After you load the home page of SWAT, you will see a window similar to Figure 120.

Username and Password Required	×		
Enter username for SWAT at 9.24.106.169:901:			
User Name:			
Password:			
OK Cancel			

Figure 120. User authorization for SWAT

Type in the user name and password of a user defined on your Linux server. Click **OK** to continue. You will see a window similar to Figure 121.



Stop

You can access SWAT using any regular user account, but you can make changes only when using the root user accpount.

Remember, when you are logging on to SWAT from a remote machine you are sending passwords in plain text. This can be a security issue, so we recommend that you do SWAT administration only over a trusted network connection.

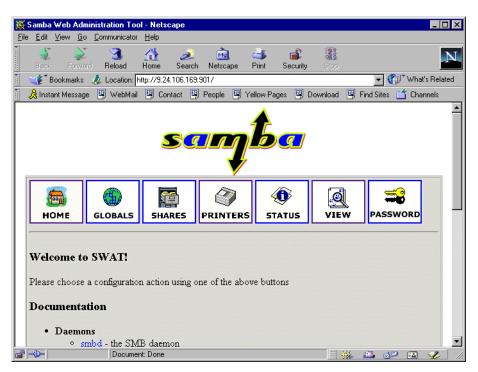


Figure 121. SWAT home page

As you can see in Figure 121, you have seven categories available:

- 1. Home here you can find all the documentation you need about Samba.
- 2. Globals display and modify global parameters from the smb.conf configuration file.
- 3. Shares you can view, modify and add shares here.
- 4. Printers to view, modify and add printers.
- 5. Status check the current status of your Samba server here.

Chapter 6. Samba 125

- 6. View view the current configuration of the smb.conf configuration file.
- 7. Passwords manage passwords for the Samba server.

In the following sections we will briefly describe the functions available in SWAT.



– Note –

After you made changes to the smb.conf configuration file, the Samba server must be restarted.

6.2.4.1 Globals

When you click the **Globals** icon in the main SWAT window, you will see a window similar to Figure 122.

		b Administration Tool -		_ 🗆 ×
Eile	<u>E</u> dit ⊻ier	w <u>G</u> o <u>C</u> ommunicator <u>H</u>	Help	
	🜏 Back	Forward Reload H	Anne Search Netscape Print Security Stop	N
	🌿 🕻 Book	marks 🛛 🙏 Location: http	p://9.24.106.169:901/globals 🗾 👘 🖤 Wha	at's Related
Ĭ	🚴 Instant M	lessage 🖳 WebMail 🛛	関 Contact 関 People 関 Yellow Pages 関 Download 関 Find Sites 🗂 I	Channels
	6		🛅 🛛 🕢 🖉 🖓 🖓 🖓 🖓	_
	ном	GLOBALS	SHARES PRINTERS STATUS VIEW PASSWOR	۱D
	Global Variables Commit Changes Reset Values Basic View Base Options			
	<u>Help</u>	workgroup	LINUX Set Defau	It
	<u>Help</u>	netbios name	NF 5000 Set Defau	lt
	<u>Help</u>	netbios aliases	Set Defau	lt
	<u>Help</u>	server string	Samba Server on Caldera OpenLinux %v Set Defau	lt
	Help	interfaces	9.24.106.169/24 Set Defau	lt
	Help	bind interfaces only	No 💌 Set Default	
	<u>Security</u>	Options		
	<u>Help</u>	security	USER 💌 Set Default	
	Help	encrypt passwords	Yes 💌 Set Default	
	Help	update encrypted	No 💌 Set Default	
	<u>Help</u> domains	allow trusted	Yes 💌 Set Default	T
F	-0-	Document:	Done 📃 💥 🕮 🔊 🖬	🏒 /i.

Figure 122. Global section in SWAT

This window enables you to modify the global parameters of your Samba server. By default you will see the Basic View. If you want to see the Advanced View, select **Advanced View**. In the Advanced View you have all options available, while the Basic View displays only the basic options. To return from the Advanced View to the Basic View select **Basic View**. After you have made your changes you can save them by clicking **Commit changes**. If you get a pop-up window similar to Figure 123, which warns you that you are sending nonsecure information over the network, you can easily select **Continue** if you are working locally or if you know that your network is secure.

Chapter 6. Samba 127

Security Information
Any information you submit is insecure and could be observed by a third party while in transit. If you are submitting passwords, credit card numbers, or other information you would like to keep private, it would be safer for you to cancel the submission.
Show This Alert Next Time
(Continue) Cancel

Figure 123. Security warning

6.2.4.2 Shares

When you click the **Shares** icon on any of the SWAT Web pages, you will see a window similar to Figure 124.

💥 Samba Web Administration Too	I - Netscape		×					
$\underline{F}ile \underline{E}dit \underline{V}iew \underline{G}o \underline{C}ommunicator$	<u>H</u> elp							
Back Forward Reload	🟦 💉 🖻 🍑 🖆 Home Search Netscape Print Securi	592.8V	N					
👔 🎺 Bookmarks 🔬 Location: http://9.24.106.169:901/shares 💿 🕥 🕼 What's Related								
🥈 🙏 Instant Message 🛛 🖳 WebMail	🖾 Contact 🖾 People 🖾 Yellow Pages 🗳	🔋 Download 🖳 Find Sites 🗂 Channels						
Instant Message WebMail Contact People Yellow Pages Download Find Sites Channels Image: Home Image: Home </th								
Documer	nt: Done		•					

Figure 124. Shares section in SWAT

Here you can:

- 1. View the defined share
- 2. Delete a share

128 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

3. Create a new share

6.2.4.3 Viewing or modifying an existing share

To view an already defined share select the share from the field to the right of the **Choose Share** button, as shown in Figure 125.

💥 Samba Web Administration Tool - Netscape							
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o <u>C</u> ommunicator <u>H</u> elp							
Back Forward Reload Home Search Netscape Print Security	Stop						
Back Polyad Heldau Holle Search Netscape Film Security	vop ▼ ∰ [*] What's Related						
👔 🔏 Instant Message 🖳 WebMail 🖳 Contact 🖳 People 🖳 Yellow Pages 🔛 D	Download 💾 Find Sites 📺 Channels						
HOME GLOBALS SHARES PRINTERS STATUS	VIEW PASSWORD						
HOME GLOBALS SHARES PRINTERS STATUS VIEW PASSWORD Share Parameters Choose Share Delete Share Create Share homes public redbook							
Document: Done	_ = 🔆 🚢 📣 🖬 🎸 /						

Figure 125. Choosing a share to view

After you have selected the share, click **Choose Share** to view the share properties. You will see a window similar to Figure 126.

Chapter 6. Samba 129

瘚			inistration To		e							_ 🗆 X	
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	<u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o	<u>C</u> ommunicator	<u>H</u> elp		•							
	ack	Forwar	d Reload	Home :	arch 🥭	Mul Netscape	de Serie Alexandre Serie Alexa	💕 Security	Stop			N	
🛛 🦋 Bookmarks 🙏 Location: http://9.24.106.169:901/shares 🛛 🔽 🍘 What's R									s Related				
	🙈 Insta	ant Message	e 🖳 WebMai	🖳 Conta	st 🖳	People 🖳	Yellow Pa	ages 🖳 D	ownload	Find Sites	📑 Cł	nannels	
	н	Э МЕ	GLOBALS	SHARI	s	PRINTER	s s	0 TATUS	VIEW	PASS	Swort	>	
Share Parameters													
	C	hoose Sha	are redbo	ok 🔻	Delet	e Share							
							1						
	3	reate Shar											
Commit Changes Reset Values Advanced View													
Base Options													
	Help comment Redbook files								Set Default				
	Help	path		/redbook						Set Default			
	<u>Secu</u>	urity Opti	ions										
	Help	guest	account	nobody						Set Defa	ult		
	Help	write	list	ßusers						Set Default			
	Help	read	only [No 🔻	Set D	efault							
	Help	guest	ok [No 💌	Set D	efault							
	<u>Help</u>	hosts	allow							Set Default			
	Help	hosts	deny							Set Defa			
E,	-0-		Docume	nt: Done						<u>an</u> 95		🏏 - //	

Figure 126. Share properties

If you want to see all available parameters, click **Advanced View.** You can also make changes and you can save them by clicking **Commit Changes**.

6.2.4.4 Deleting the existing share

To delete the existing share you must first select an already defined share similar to Figure 125. Then select **Delete Share**.



- Stop -

A share will be deleted immediately and without warning.



After you have deleted a share you must restart the Samba server.

6.2.4.5 Creating a new share

To create a simple share, do the following:

1. Create a directory that will be used for the share. You can do this by executing this command from a terminal session:

mkdir /home/public

In our example we created a "public" subdirectory below the "home" directory.

- 2. Make sure that the UNIX permissions are set correctly in that directory, so that only intended users have access permissions for it.
- 3. Type in the name of the share you are creating in the shares view of the SWAT Web pages displayed in Figure 127.

₩s	amba ¥	Veb Adı	ninistration Too	I - Netscap	е							_ 🗆 ×
File	<u>E</u> dit <u>V</u>	/iew <u>G</u> o	o <u>C</u> ommunicator	<u>H</u> elp								
•	- 🎸 -	- 衸	i 🧐 🗌		<u>s</u>	m)	4	1				N
<u> </u>	Back		ard Reload	Home S	earch N	etscape	Print	Security	Stop			
Ĩ.	🌾 🖁 Bo	okmarks	🛛 🎄 Location: H	ittp://9.24.10	6.169:901/	'shares				💽 💽	l [™] What's I	Related
¥.	😤 Instan	t Messag	je 🖳 WebMail	🖳 Contac	t 🖳 Pe	ople 🖳	Yellow Pa	iges 🖳	Download	🖳 Find Sites	📫 Cha	nnels
	1						4	0	l Q			
	но	ME	GLOBALS	SHARE	5 PP		5 51	TATUS			word	
1 1	no		GEODAES	Share				AIGS				
	C1	D.	arametei									
1	Snar	e Pa	arameter	-8								
	Cho	oose Sk	nare	•	Delete S	hare						
	Cre	ate Sha	are publi	3								
												-

Figure 127. Entering the name for new share

4. Click **Create Share** to continue. You will see a window similar to Figure 128.

Chapter 6. Samba 131

			inistration To		ape						_ 🗆 ×
Eile	<u>E</u> dit	<u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o	<u>C</u> ommunicato	r <u>H</u> elp		*	-		1000		
	- 😪 Back	Forwar	d Reload	Mome	2 Search	Multina (Netscape	Int (💕 Security	Stop		N
Σ.	😻 E	lookmarks	🙏 Location:	http://9.24	.106.169:	901/shares				💽 🌘 🐨 Wh	at's Related
i .	🚴 Insta	ant Message	e 🖳 WebMa	i 🖳 Cor	itact 🖳	People 🖳	Yellow P	ages 🖳 🛙	ownload	🖳 Find Sites 🛛 🖆	
			GLOBALS	SHA	RES	PRINTER	، د5 5	() TATUS	VIEW	PASSWO	RD
		re Pa	ramete		Dele	te Share					
	Create Share										
				_		1		_			
	Ci	ommit Cha	anges	Reset ∨	alues	Advan	ced Viev	~			
	Base	• Options	5								
	Help	comr	nent							Set Default	
	<u>Help</u>	path		/help/;	public					Set Default	
	Secu	rity Opti	ons						-		
	<u>Help</u>	guest	account	nobody						Set Default	
	<u>Help</u>	read	only	No 💌	Set [Default					
	<u>Help</u>	guest	ok	No 🔻	Set [Default					
	<u>Help</u>	hosts	allow							Set Default	
	<u>Help</u>	hosts	deny							Set Default	
	D	ma Anti		ent: Done						<u>a</u> de 🖬	<u>▼</u>

Figure 128. Entering the new share parameters

- 5. Fill in the necessary parameters. If you need to set some advanced parameters also, click **Advanced View** and you will see all available parameters. After you typed in all you want, click **Commit Changes** to save your new share.
- 6. You can see the changed smb.conf configuration file by selecting **View** from the SWAT Web page. You will see a window similar to Figure 129.

132 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

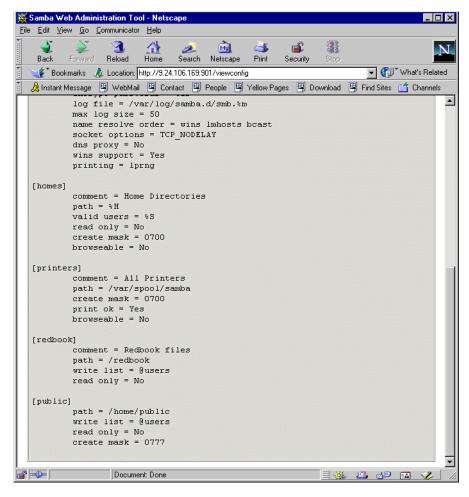


Figure 129. Viewing smb.conf configuration file

7. Restart the Samba server.

You have just created your first usable share on the Samba server. Be friendly and share it with other users!

6.2.4.6 Restarting the Samba server

The Samba server can be restarted from the **Status** section. To get to this section click the **Status** icon on any SWAT Web page. You will see a window similar to Figure 130.

Chapter 6. Samba 133

💥 Samba	web A	dministra	tion Tool	- Netscape							
	<u>V</u> iew _!	<u>G</u> o <u>C</u> omi	municator	<u>H</u> elp							
Back	For	ward R	3. eload H	🚮 🤌 Home Sea	🗾 📆 rch Netscape	ा Print	💕 Security	Stop			N
	Bookmark	us 🙏 L	ocation: htt	p://9.24.106.1	69:901/status				- 🗊	* What's Rel	ated
🛛 🚴 Inst	ant Mess	age 関	WebMail	🖳 Contact	🖳 People 🛛 🖳	Yellow P	'ages 🖳 [Download 🖪	Find Sites	📫 Channe	els
	OME	GLC	BALS	SHARES	PRINTER	15 S	0 TATUS	VIEW	PASS	word	
	Server Status Auto Refresh										
	Refresh Interval: 30 version: 2.0.5										
smb	d: run	ning S	Stop smbi	d Res	tart smbd						
	d: run		Stop nmb		tart nmbd						
Acti	ve Co	nnecti	ons								
РП	Cl	ient	IP addre	ss	Date	Kill					
115	08 23-8	3p3pc 9	.24.106.	146 Wed (Oct 20 15:37	×					
Acti	ve Sh	ares									
Sha	re Use	r Grouj	p PID	Client	Date						
publ	ic ivo	users	11508	23-8p3pc	Wed Oct 20	15:37					
1000	Open Files										
* =0=			Document	: Done					25 JP	🔝 🎺	//

Figure 130. Restarting Samba server

To restart Samba server, simply click **Restart smbd.** On this page you can also restart just the WINS server by clicking **Restart nmbd.**

6.2.4.7 Printers

In the printers section you can view, modify, or add printers. The operations for handling printers are the same as for handling shares. You can access the printer settings by clicking the **Printers** icon on the SWAT Web page similar to Figure 131.

赉	Gamba	Web	Admi	nistration Too	l - Netso	cape						□ ×
Eile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>G</u> o	$\underline{C} ommunicator$	<u>H</u> elp							
Finance	ack Back		🤹	3. Reload	A Home	🯄 Search	My. Netscape	de Seria de	💕 Security	Stop		N
₩	ا آ 🍋	Bookma	arks	🮄 Location: h	ttp://9.24	.106.169:	901/printers				🚽 🎧 🕻 What's Rela	ated
₩	🚴 Inst	ant Me:	ssage	🖳 WebMail	🖳 Cor	ntact 🖳	People 🖳	Yellow P	ages 🖳 [)ownload 📱	🕽 Find Sites 🛛 🗂 Channe	els
	н	<mark>ба</mark> Оме		GLOBALS	SHA	RES	PRINTER	:S 5'	ر) TATUS	VIEW	PASSWORD	
	Printer Parameters Important Note: Printer names marked with [*] in the Choose Printer drop-down box are autoloaded printers from Printcap Name. Attempting to delete these printers from SWAT will have no effect.											
		hoose reate				Dele	te Printer					•

Figure 131. SWAT printers section

If you want to view the settings for a specific printer, then select the printer from the list as shown in Figure 132.

Chapter 6. Samba 135

濲	Samba	a Web	Admi	nistration Too	l - Netso	cape						'×
Eile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>G</u> o	Communicator	<u>H</u> elp							
	acł	r K Fo	يني Tward	3. Reload	☆ Home	🯄 Search	Mu. Netscape	d Brint	💕 Security	Stop		N.
	1	Bookma	arks	🮄 Location: 🏼	ttp://9.24	.106.169:	901/printers				🔽 🍘 What's Relat	ted
₩	🚴 Inst	ant Mes	ssage	🖳 WebMail	📕 Cor	ntact 🖳	People 🖳	Yellow Pa	ages 🖳 D	ownload 🖳	🕽 Find Sites 🖆 Channel:	s
	H	<mark>ба</mark> Оме		GLOBALS	SHA	RES	PRINTER	.\$ 5'	0 TATUS	VIEW	PASSWORD	•
	Imp Printe Printo	orta er nam	nt N les m ame. Prin	arked with [Attempting t	*] in the o delete vrs	e these p					l printers from	

Figure 132. Selecting printer

After you have selected the printer click **Choose Printer** to view its properties. You will see a window similar to Figure 133.

		eb Administration T							-	
<u>File</u>	<u>E</u> dit ⊻ie	ew <u>G</u> o <u>C</u> ommunica	AL (2)	*						
	Sack	Forward Reload	Home Search	My]. Netscape	Internation	💕 Security	Stop			N.
	🌾 🕻 Book	kmarks 🧔 Locatior	n: http://9.24.106.169:	901/printers				. (1)	What's Re	elated
			lail 🖳 Contact 🖳		Yellow Pa	ges 🖳 D	ownload	🖳 Find Sites	ゴ Chanr	
	Choo	ose Printer	ps1 💌 Dele	te Printer						-
	Crea	te Printer								
	Com	mit Changes	Reset Values	Advan	ced View					
	Base O	ptions								
	<u>Help</u>	comment						Set Defaul	t	
	<u>Help</u>	path	/var/spool/s	amba				Set Defaul	t	
	Securit	y Options								
	Help	guest account	nobody					Set Defaul	t	
	Help	guest ok	No 💌 Set [Default					_	
	Help	hosts allow						Set Defaul	t	
	<u>Help</u>	hosts deny						Set Defaul	t	
	Printing	g Options								
	<u>Help</u>	print ok	Yes 💌 Set [Default						
	<u>Help</u>	printing	Iprng 💌 Set	Default						
	<u>Help</u>	printer name	ps1					Set Defaul	t	
	Browse	Options								
	<u>Help</u>	browseable	Yes 💌 Set [Default						
	Miscel	laneous Options								-
-	-0-	Docu	ment: Done				8	<u>∿≞</u> _{⊅	🛋 🥩	

Figure 133. Printer properties

In this view you can also modify the printer properties. When you are done, save settings by clicking **Commit Changes.**

6.2.4.8 Status

In this section you can check the status of the Samba server. Here you can see all current connections and open files. You can also start or restart the Samba server or just its components. You can access the printer settings by clicking the **Status** icon on the SWAT Web page similar to Figure 134.

Chapter 6. Samba 137

Samba V	/eb Ad	ministra	ation Tool	- Netscape	;					_	Π×
e <u>E</u> dit <u>\</u>	(iew <u>G</u>	o <u>C</u> om	municator	<u>H</u> elp							
🔌 Back	Forwa	ard R	3. Ieload I	🚮 🍦	💉 <u> </u>	d Print	💕 Security	Stop			N
🆋 Bo	okmarks	🏼 🤳 L	.ocation: ht	tp://9.24.106	.169:901/status				💽 💽	" What's Rel	lated
🚴 Instan	t Messa <u>c</u>	je 関	WebMail	🖳 Contact	🖳 People 📱	Yellow I	Pages 🖳	Download	🖳 Find Sites	📫 Channe	
но	•	GLC		SHARES	5 PRINTE	RS S	() STATUS	VIEW	PASS	word	
Serv			IS								
Auto	Refres	h	_								
Refresh Interval: 30											
version	n: 2.0.1	; 									
smbd:	runni	ng 🔄	Stop smb	d Re	start smbd						
nmbd:	runni	ng	Stop nmb	d Re	start nmbd						
Activ											
PID	Clie	ent	IP addre	ess	Date	Kill					
12362	23-8p	-3pc S	9.24.106.	146 Wed	Oct 20 17:17	X					
12363	23-8p	-3pc S	9.24.106.	146 Wed	Oct 20 17:17	X					
Activ	e Sha	res									
Share	User	Grou	p PID	Client	Date						
ivo	ivo	users	12363	23-8p3pa	Wed Oct 20	17:18					
-0-			Document	t: Done					<u>∿≞</u> , ⊴⊅	🖪 🏈	

Figure 134. Status section

6.2.4.9 View

In this section you can see the current smb.conf configuration file. You can access printer settings by clicking the **View** icon on the SWAT Web page similar to Figure 135.

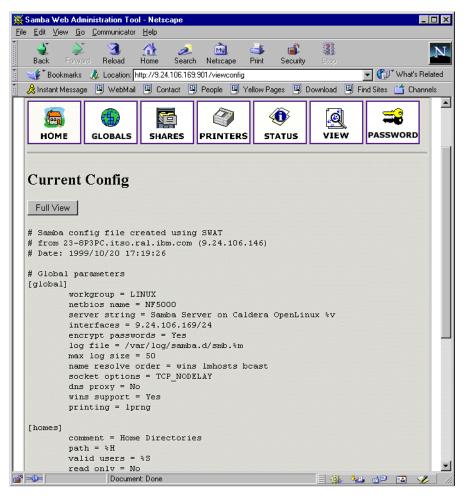


Figure 135. View section of SWAT

6.2.4.10 Password

In this section you can manage the passwords of your Samba users. You can access printer settings by clicking the **Password** icon on the SWAT Web page similar to Figure 136.

Chapter 6. Samba 139

💥 Samba Web Administration To	ol - Netscape					
<u>File Edit ⊻iew Go C</u> ommunicato	<u>H</u> elp					
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	Home Search		🌛 💕 Print Security	Stop		N
🛛 🌿 Bookmarks 🙏 Location:	http://9.24.106.169:	901/passwd				What's Related
🛛 👌 Instant Message 🛛 🖳 WebMai	🖳 Contact 🖳	People 🖳 Ye	llow Pages 🖳	Download 🖳	Find Sites 🤅	
HOME GLOBALS	SHARES	PRINTERS	O STATUS	VIEW	PASSV	vord
Server Password	l Managei	ment	1			
User Name :	root					
New Password :						
Re-type New Password :						
Change Password	Add New User	Disable	User Er	able User]	
Client/Server Pa	ssword M	lanagem	ent			
Old Password :						
New Password :						
Re-type New Password :						
Remote Machine :						
Change Password						
🚰 💷 🛛 Docume	ent: Done				.	

Figure 136. Managing passwords

6.3 Configuration and tuning hints

Try to play with the following socket options to your smb.conf file:

TCP_NODELAY IPTOS_LOWDELAY SO_SNDBUF=4096 SO_RCVBUF=4096

These options may increase the performance on local networks, but your mileage may vary. The documents

/usr/doc/packages/samba/textdocs/Speed.txt

and

/usr/doc/packages/samba/textdocs/Speed2.txt

will give you some more background about these and a few other tuning options.

6.4 Sources of additional information

Samba is very well documented. A wealth of document files can be found in the directory /usr/doc/packages/samba.

You can find more information at the official Web site of the Samba project:

http://www.samba.org

Using Samba by Robert Eckstein, David Collier-Brown and Peter Kelly, published by O'Reilly, is also a good book. It is available online at:

http://www.oreilly.com/catalog/samba/chapter/book/index.html

And there are always good how-to documents on the Linux Documentation project home page:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/SMB-HOWTO.html

Chapter 6. Samba 141

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers

The Apache Web server is the most popular Web server software on today's Internet. According to the NetCraft Web server survey at http://www.netcraft.com/survey/, more than 55% of all surveyed Web servers (more than 7.3 million) were running a version of Apache (as of the time of this writing). Apache is a very successful collaborative Open Source project. The Web site for Apache is http://www.apache.org. Because of the free availability of the full source code, it is a very flexible and powerful Web server solution. There are also a lot of additional modules, which can be used in combination with the Apache main program. Some popular examples are PHP (PHP: Hypertext Preprocessor, an embedded HTML scripting language), mod_perl (an embedded perl interpreter) and mod_ssl for secure transactions. More Apache modules can be downloaded from the Apache Module Registry at:

http://modules.apache.org.

Some of key features of Apache are:

- Implements the latest protocols, including HTTP/1.1 (RFC2068).
- Is highly configurable and extensible with third-party modules.
- Can be customized by writing "modules" using the Apache module API.
- Provides full source code and comes with an unrestrictive license.
- Runs on most versions of UNIX (including Linux) without modification.
- DBM databases for authentication, which allow you to easily set up password-protected pages with enormous numbers of authorized user, without bogging down the server. A wide variety of SQL databases can be used for authentication too (using additional modules).
- Customized responses to errors and problems, which allow you to set up files, or even CGI scripts, which are returned by the server in response to errors and problems. For example, you can set up a script to intercept 500 server errors and perform on-the-fly diagnostics for both users and yourself.
- Multiple DirectoryIndex directives, which allow you to "say" DirectoryIndex index.html index.cgi, which instructs the server to either send back index.html or run index.cgi when a directory URL is requested, whichever it finds in the directory.
- Unlimited numbers of alias and redirect directives that may be declared in the config files.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

- Content negotiation, the ability to automatically serve clients of varying sophistication and HTML level compliance, with documents which offer the best representation of information that the client is capable of accepting.
- Multi-homed servers, which allow the server to distinguish between requests made to different IP addresses (mapped to the same machine).

7.1 The IBM HTTP Server

The IBM HTTP Server powered by Apache is based on the Apache HTTP Server. In addition to Linux, this HTTP Server also runs on AIX, Solaris and Windows NT. See the home page at:

http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/

IBM HTTP Server for Linux offers the following additional features:

- Remote Configuration: a browser-based configuration tool to allow manipulation of the server configuration via a GUI.
- SNMP Support: Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a well-established protocol for managing and gathering information about servers remotely. This new support allows IBM HTTP Server to be managed by the SNMP protocol.
- LDAP: The IBM HTTP Server Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) plug-in allows authentication and authorization (which is required when accessing a protected resource) to be performed by an LDAP server, thereby greatly decreasing the administrative overhead for maintaining user and group information locally for each Web server.
- Machine Translation Support: This new function, when used with an available IBM Machine Translation Engine, enables the IBM HTTP Server to translate English Web pages into other languages without human intervention. This permits a Web site visitor to read the page in his native language, effectively broadening the reach of your Web site. IBM Machine Translation Engines are included in the WebSphere Application Server 3.0 and include German, Simplified Chinese and Traditional Chinese. Additional languages will be available in the future.
- Support for SSL secure connections: The IBM HTTP Server powered by Apache supports both the SSL Version 2 and SSL Version 3 protocols. This protocol, implemented using IBM security libraries, ensures that data transferred between a client and a server remains private. Once your server has a digital certificate, SSL-enabled browsers such as Netscape Navigator and Microsoft Internet Explorer can communicate securely with your server using the SSL protocol. The IBM HTTP Server powered by



Apache supports client authentication, configurable cipher specifications, and session ID caching for improving SSL performance on the UNIX platforms.

• Fast Response Cache Accelerator: The Cache Accelerator can dramatically improve the performance of the IBM HTTP Server powered by Apache when serving static pages, for example, text and image files. Because the Cache Accelerator cache is automatically loaded during server operation, you are not required to list the files to be cached in your server configuration file. In addition, the server will automatically recache changed pages and remove outdated pages from the cache. The Cache Accelerator provides support for caching on Web servers with single and multiple TCP/IP adapters.

7.2 Apache HTTP Server installation

The Apache HTTP Server is installed and started by default on SuSE Linux, because it is used for the online help system. You can verify the installation by querying the RPM database:

rpm -q apache

This command will return either the version number of the installed package or an error message, if the package is not installed. Refer to 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51 for how to install the package if it is missing. The package window is located in series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News). Apache will be automatically started on bootup, if the variable START_HTTP in the central configuration file /etc/rc.config is set to yes. See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for methods to modify this variable. To start, stop or reload window (after a configuration change), run the script:

/usr/sbin/rcapache (start|stop|reload).

This file is a symbolic link to the init script in:

/sbin/init.d/apache.

In the SuSE default installation, Apache will serve HTML documents from the directory /usr/local/httpd/htdocs and CGI scripts from /usr/local/httpd/cgi-bin. If you installed the PHP module (mod_php), it will also execute PHP code, if the file ends on .php3. The access log file is in /var/log/httpd.access_log, the error log file is /var/log/httpd.error_log. The Apache configuration files reside in the subdirectory /etc/httpd.

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers 145

If you now point your browser to the server's IP address, you should see the following start page (/usr/local/httpd/htdocs/index.html), when the Apache HTTP Server is running:



Figure 137. Apache startup page on SuSE Linux

7.3 IBM HTTP Server installation

To install the IBM HTTP Server on SuSE Linux, you need to perform the following steps.

For the IBM HTTP Server and the remote administration capabilities, download the tar files from the Web page:

http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/download.html

The HTTPServer.linux.glibc21.server.tar file contains the following packages:

- IBM_HTTP_Server-1.3.6-2.i386.rpm - the IHS Web server

146 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

- IBM_Apache_Source-1.3.6-2.i386.rpm the Apache 1.3.6 sources
- Readme.httpserver Installation notes

The HTTPServer.linux.glibc21.admin.tar file contains the following packages:

- IBM_Admin_Server-1.3.6-1.i386.rpm GUI Administration Server
- IBM_Admin_Server_Forms-1.3.6-1.i386.rpm Web forms for the GUI

There are some additional packages such as SNMP and SSL modules, that also can be installed. However, these will not be covered in this chapter. Please see the installation instructions at:

```
http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/doc/v136/readme_httpserver.htm
```

After you have downloaded the "tarballs", move them to the directory /tmp and extract them with the command:

```
tar xvf HTTPServer.linux.glibc21.server.tar
tar xvf HTTPServer.linux.glibc21.admin.tar
```

This will extract the above-listed RPM files from the tar archive into the subdirectory /tmp/IHS. You now need to become the root user (if you not already are). To avoid resource conflicts, you first have to shut down the currently running Apache Web server (if installed), by executing the following command:

```
rcapache stop
```

Also make sure, that it will not be started again after the next reboot by changing the variable START_HTTPD in /etc/rc.config to "no".

Now you need to install the packages with the following commands (assuming the packages reside in the current directory):

```
rpm -Uvh IBM_HTTP_Server-1.3.6-1.i386.rpm
rpm -Uhv IBM_Admin_Server-1.3.6-1.i386.rpm
rpm -Uhv IBM_Admin_Server_Forms-1.3.6-1.i386.rpm
```

The installation of the HTTP Server package will also attempt to start the server automatically. If this did not start, you might still have another HTTP Server running. Stop this one first, and try to restart the IBM HTTP Server with the following command:

/sbin/init.d/ibmhttpd start

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers 147

If no errors are present on the command line or in the /opt/IBMHTTPServer/logs/error_log file, open the new HTTP Server's home page with your browser. You should see the following page:



Figure 138. IBM HTTP Server startup page

If you still see the old Web server's startup page (see Figure 137), press Shift+Reload on the Netscape browser to force a reload of this page.

The basic installation of the IBM HTTP Server is now finished. In the default setup, it serves HTML pages from the directory /opt/IBMHTTPD/htdocs and CGI scripts from /opt/IBMHTTPD/cgi-bin. The log files reside in /opt/IBMHTTPD/logs.

7.3.1 Activating IBM HTTPD on system bootup

By default, the IBM HTTP Server has to be started manually after a system reboot. If you want to start it automatically, you have to add the startup script to the bootup procedure. Chapter 17, "The SuSE Linux boot concept" in the SuSE Linux 6.2 manual and the manual page init.d(7) give you a detailed description of these mechanisms.

148 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

If you want this server to be started on bootup, you have to create the correct symbolic links in the directory /sbin/init.d/rc2.d (if you start the system in runlevel 2, the default runlevel), or /sbin/init.d/rc3.d (If you use the graphical login, runlevel 3). You can do this manually with the following commands:

```
cd /sbin/init.d/rc2.d
ln -s ../ibmhttpd ./S67ibmhttpd
ln -s ../ibmhttpd ./K01ibmhttpd
```

This will start the IBM HTTP Server in runlevel 2 and make sure, that it will be properly shut down when switching into another runlevel (for example shutdown). Repeat the above last two steps in directory /sbin/init.d/rc3.d for runlevel 3.

SuSE Linux also ships with a runlevel configuration tool, called rctab., which can be used to configure the services to start in this runlevel. To add the script ibmhttp to this runlevel, run rctab with the following command line:

```
rctab -e -2
```

This will open an editor (vi by default, depending on the environment variable \$EDITOR) that shows the sequence in which services will be started in this runlevel. Just move to the last entry in the list and add "ibmhttpd" at the first free slot (marked with a "-"). After saving this file, rctab will create the necessary symbolic links.

7.3.2 Setting up the Administration Server

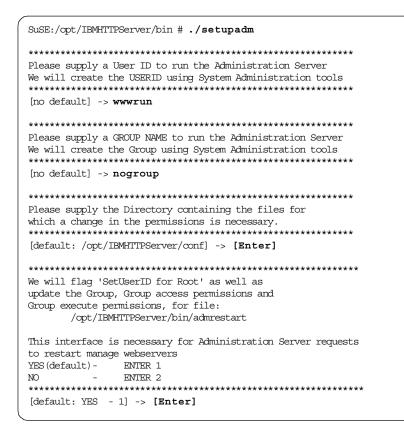
You have to perform some preliminary steps before you can start using the Administration Server to be able to modify the configuration files of your IBM HTTP Server remotely.

The Administration Server tasks allow the Administration Server read/write/execute access to the necessary configuration files and one executable file. The Administration Server should obtain read/write access through a unique user ID and group, which must be created. The User and Group directives of the Administration Server's configuration file should be changed to the unique user ID and group. The Administration Server's configuration file's "group access permissions" should be changed to allow read/write "group access". In addition there is a utility program that should have "Group execute permissions" and "Set User ID Root permissions". This executable must run as root in order to request restarts for the IBM HTTP Server and the Administration Server.

To properly set up these prerequisites, these tasks can be performed by executing the script /opt/IBMHTTPserver/bin/setupadm. After the invocation,

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers 149

it will ask you a few questions and will give detailed information about each step it is performing. Enter the keywords marked in boldface in the following screens:



```
You may use WildCards (i.e *.conf)
Please supply a File Name for permission changes
Default will change file permissions for ALL files in directory
[default: ALL FILES] -> [Enter]
These are the file(s) and directory for which we will be changing
Group permissions:
-rw-r--r-- 1 root
                              root
                                              4137 Jul 29 15:02 admin.conf
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
                                            4137 Jul 29 15:02 admin.conf.default
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
                                            6246 Jul 29 15:02 admin.msg

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      1 Jul 29 15:02 dumin.passing

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      30990 Oct 22 08:43 httpd.conf

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      30989 Jul 29 14:58 httpd.conf.default

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      46360 Jul 29 14:58 httpd.conf.sample

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      12441 Jul 29 14:58 magic

      -rw-r--r--
      1 root
      root
      12441 Jul 29 14:58 magic

-r--r-- 1 root root
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
                                           12441 Jul 29 14:58 magic.default
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root
                                            7350 Jul 29 14:58 mime.types
7350 Jul 29 14:58 mime.types.default
                                             1024 Oct 22 08:43 /opt/IBMHTTPServer/conf
This is the file for which we will be adding 'set user ID' permission for Root:
                                              46807 Jul 29 15:02 /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/ad
-rwsr-x--- 1 root
                              root
mrestart
CONTINUE - Perform Changes ENTER 1
QUIT - No Changes ENTER 2
[default: QUIT - 2] -> 1
```

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers

151

```
>>>Validating Group Name: 'nogroup' <<<
        Group Name: 'nogroup' already exists
>>>Validating UserID:wwwrun<<<
        UserID: 'wwwrun' already exists
Changing Group:
CMD: 'chgrp /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/admrestart'
Change Group permissions and Add SetUserID permission for Root:
CMD: 'chmod 4750 /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/admrestart'
Changing Group:
CMD: 'chgrp nogroup /opt/IBMHITPServer/conf /opt/IBMHITPServer/conf/* '
Changing Group permissions:
CMD: 'chmod g+rw /opt/IBMHITPServer/conf /opt/IBMHITPServer/conf/*'
.....
Here are the new file(s) and directory permissions:
drwxrwxr-x 2 root
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root
                        nogroup
                                     1024 Oct 22 08:43 /opt/IBMHTTPServer/conf
                                     4137 Jul 29 15:02 admin.conf
                       nogroup
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 4137 Jul 29 15:02 admin.conf.default
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 6246 Jul 29 15:02 admin.msg
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 1 Jul 29 15:02 admin.pass
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 1 Jul 29 15:02 admin.pass
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 30990 Oct 22 08:43 httpd.conf
                                     1 Jul 29 15:02 admin.passwd

        -rw-rw-r--
        1
        root
        nogroup
        30989
        Jul 29
        14:58
        httpd.conf.default

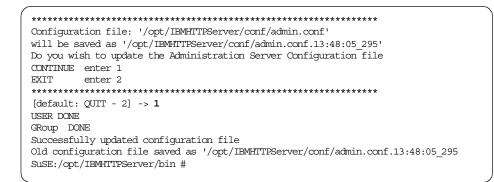
        -r--rw----
        1
        root
        nogroup
        46360
        Jul 29
        14:58
        httpd.conf.sample

        -rw-rw-r--
        1
        root
        nogroup
        12411
        Jul 29
        14:58
        magic

        nogroup
        46360 Jul 29 14:58 httpd

        nogroup
        12441 Jul 29 14:58 magic

-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 12441 Jul 29 14:58 magic.default
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 7350 Jul 29 14:58 mime.types
-rw-rw-r-- 1 root nogroup 7350 Jul 29 14:58 mime.types.default
Here is a file with 'set user ID' permission for Root:
-rwsr-x--- 1 root
                                  46807 Jul 29 15:02 /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/ad
                        nogroup
mrestart
Changes Completed
```



To summarize the above steps: the Administration Server will be running under the user name "wwwrun" and the group "nobody."

The Administration Server is basically just another Web server, running in parallel with the main IBM HTTP Server(s). Therefore it has to be started separately and listens on another TCP port (8008 by default). By default, it has to be started manually. If you also want to start it on system bootup, you have to integrate the start script into the bootup procedure. Copy the file /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/adminctl to the directory /sbin/init.d and follow the steps described in 7.3.1, "Activating IBM HTTPD on system bootup" on page 148, using adminctl as the init script name instead of ibmhttpd this time.

The Administration Server is protected with a user name and password. You can create an entry in the password file /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/conf/admin.passwd by issuing the following command from inside the directory /opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin:

./htpasswd -m ../conf/admin.passwd <user name>

Enter the password for the required user name twice. It is possible to have more than one user name in this password file, if you need to differentiate between multiple administrators.

Now you can start the Administration Server by running the following command:

/opt/IBMHTTPServer/bin/adminctl start

After clicking **Configure Server**, shown in Figure 138 on page 148, you need to enter the user name and password you defined for the Administration Server user. If entered correctly, you will see the welcome page of the Administration Server:

Chapter 7. Apache and IBM HTTP Servers 153

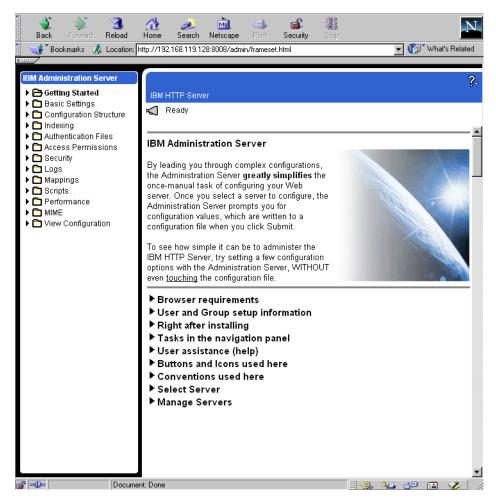


Figure 139. Administration Server startup window

You are now ready to start adjusting the configuration of your main Web server according to your needs. Please see the online documentation for help about the different configuration options.

7.4 General performance tips

Configuring Apache for maximum performance is dependent on many parameters. Apache is very flexible and gaining the best performance may require some research. A very informative document about Apache performance tuning can be found on the Apache Web site:

154 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

In short, experiment with the following options:

- · Set FollowSymLinks option unless you really don't want it.
- Set AllowOverride to None unless you really need it.
- Explicitly list all DirectoryIndex file options from most to least commonly used.
- Tune KeepAliveTimeout starting with 3 ranging to 30 per content and connection types.
- Apache (and the IBM HTTP Server as well) use multiple processes to handle individual requests. Tune StartServers starting with 64 increasing in steps of 32 until performance drops off. Tune MaxClients starting with the value of StartServers. Note: Scaling performance can fall off dramatically if Max Clients is too large!
- For SMP systems listening on a single socket, try recompiling after defining SINGLE_LISTEN_UNSERIALIZED_ACCEPT.

A helpful utility to benchmark your Apache server is ab. In its simplest form, you can call it like this:

ab http://www.your-server.com/index.html

The following are ab options:

	/	
1	SuSE:/usr/src # ab	-h
	Usage: ab [options]	[http://]hostname[:port]/path
	Options are:	
	-n requests	Number of requests to perform
	-c concurrency	Number of multiple requests to make
	-t timelimit	Seconds to max. wait for responses
	-p postfile	File containg data to POST
	-T content-type	Content-type header for POSTing
	-v verbosity	How much troubleshooting info to print
	-w	Print out results in HIML tables
	-x attributes	String to insert as table attributes
	-y attributes	String to insert as tr attributes
	-z attributes	String to insert as td or th attributes
	-V	Print version number and exit
	-k	Use HTTP KeepAlive feature
ļ	-h	Display usage information (this message)

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains

Whenever you connect your computer to today's Internet, you are exposed to intruders from the outside. There are thousands of potential hackers just waiting to get into your computer to do damage or maybe to steal information. Therefore you schould set up some protective measures against them!

A very efficient way of blocking malicious attackers is IP packet filtering. The Linux kernel includes functions that enable it to analyze TCP/IP data packets by means of applying certain filter rules on them. This can be done for incoming as well as outgoing traffic.

8.1 What is a firewall?

As you can tell from the name, a firewall is a wall that protects what is on one side of the wall from fire on the other side. In the computer world a firewall protects you from the outside world, so nobody can set fire to your computer. Usually firewalls are used to protect an internal network from the outside world. You can also use a firewall on a single computer with a dial-up connection to the Internet. When you install a firewall to protect your internal network, every computer that wants to talk to a computer on the internal network must ask the firewall for permission. If the permission is not granted, access will be denied.

8.2 What can you do with Linux firewall?

With a Linux firewall, here are some of the possibilities:

- You can protect your internal network connected to the Internet from outside intruders.
- You can perform Network Address Translation (NAT), which allows local computers on your network to use Internet resources using unofficial IP addresses. This is also called IP masquerading.
- You can filter information going in or out of your internal network or just on one computer.
- You can use your Linux server as a gateway between two different types of networks, for example connecting token-ring and Ethernet worlds. This can be a cheap solution in comparison to buying an expensive router for this task.
- You can share your single dial-up Internet connection with others.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

8.3 What do you need to run an IP packet filter?

To set up a packet filtering server with IP Chains, your Linux installation needs to meet some requirements:

- You need a Linux kernel Version 2.2.x or higher. It is recommended that you use the latest available stable version. The kernel has to be compiled with appropriate modules for IP forwarding, IP masquerading, and IP firewalling. It is recommended that you compile all your networking options and available modules. The default kernel on SuSE Linux is already configured for this purpose.
- 2. Loadable kernel modules Version 2.1.121 or newer
- 3. IP Chains utilities 1.3.8 or newer

The default installation of SuSE Linux 6.2 meets all these requirements except that the kernel is not optimized to be used as a router. So if you want to increase the performance of the routing process you should recompile the kernel by choosing the option **IP - optimize as router not host**. However, this is only necessary on a high-bandwidth network. If your outside line to the Internet is only a 56 kbps modem connection, even an old 486 computer is sufficient for this task.

8.4 Network configuration for a firewall implementation

In this section we describe our lab network setup for implementing a firewall solution.

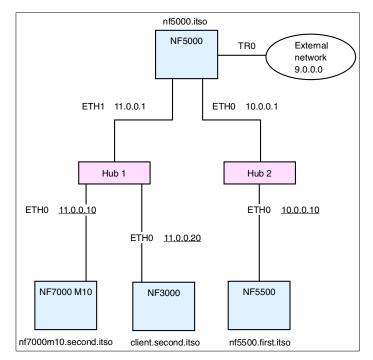


Figure 140. Lab network setup for firewall solution

You can see that our network setup contains from the following systems:

- Netfinity 5000 with three Network Interface Cards (NICs) acts as a gateway. The NICs have been configured with the following settings:
 - a. eth0 10.0.0.1
 - a. eth1 11.0.0.1
 - a. tr0 9.24.104.202
- Netfinity 5500 with one NIC and the following settings:
 - a. eth0 10.0.0.10, default gateway 10.0.0.1
- Netfinity 7000M10 with one NIC and the following settings:
 - a. eth0 11.0.0.10, default gateway 11.0.0.1
- Netfinity 3000 with one NIC and the following settings:
 - a. eth0 11.0.0.20, default gateway 11.0.0.1

As you can see, we have two separate networks, 10.0.0.0 and 11.0.0.0. These networks are connected to a Linux server that is acting as a gateway (router) between them. You see that our gateway is connected to the Internet

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains 159

with a registered IP address. We enabled IP forwarding on the server that was acting as the gateway.

8.5 How to permanently enable IP forwarding

On SuSE Linux, the network subsystem is started by executing the init script during the server startup:

/sbin/init.d/network

For security reasons, IP forwarding is not enabled by default. To enable it open the file /etc/rc.config in a text editor and look for the following line:

IP_FORWARD=no

and change it to:

IP_FORWARD=yes

You can also use YaST to modify the content of this variable. See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for information about this.

IP forwarding will now be enabled on the next system bootup. If you want to activate this feature immediately, enter the following command:

echo "1" > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_forward

Now your server is ready to act as a router. You can try this by pinging to the tr0 interface 9.24.104.202 from a machine on 11.0.0.0 network. If the ping is successful, your router is working correctly. You will see a screen similar to Figure 141.

[root@client /root]# ping 9.24.104.202
PING 9.24.104.202 (9.24.104.202): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 9.24.104.202: icmp seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.7 ms
64 bytes from 9.24.104.202: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
64 bytes from 9.24.104.202: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
64 bytes from 9.24.104.202: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
64 bytes from 9.24.104.202: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
9.24.104.202 ping statistics 5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss round-trip min/avg/max = 0.3/0.3/0.7 ms [root@client /root]# []

Figure 141. Ping after enabling IP forwarding

8.6 Your first IP Chains success

It does not make sense to have a router without deploying it. In this section, we will set up IP masquerading manually on the gateway. To access the external network 9.0.0.0 from the internal network 11.0.0.0, use the IP masquerading function of IP Chains. Follow these steps on the gateway server to set up File Transfer Protocol (FTP) access from the internal network 11.0.0.0 to external network 9.0.0.0:

4. First load the kernel module for FTP masquerading:

/sbin/modprobe ip_masq_ftp

If you want to use other protocols, such as Real Audio and Internet Relay Chat (IRC), you can load these modules as well.

5. Setup the timeout for IP masquerading:

/sbin/ipchains -M -S 8000 20 200

The parameters have the following meaning:

- a. 8000 timeout value for TCP sessions in seconds
- b. 20 timeout value for TCP sessions after a FIN packet in seconds
- c. 200 timeout value for UDP packets in seconds

You can adjust these settings to meet your needs.

6. Change the built-in policy for forwarding by disabling it for all IP addresses:

/sbin/ipchains -P forward DENY

7. Add the policy for enabling the forwarding with masquerading for your internal networks:

/sbin/ipchains -A forward -s 10.0.0.0/24 -j MASQ /sbin/ipchains -A forward -s 11.0.0.0/24 -j MASQ

You are now ready to try your setup. Execute the following command from a computer on the 11.0.0.0 network:

/usr/bin/ftp <server>

Where server is an FTP server on the external network (in our example 9.0.0.0). You will see a screen similar to Figure 142.

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains 161

[root@client /root]# ftp 9.24.106.49 Connected to 9.24.106.49.	
220 TPIV02 IBM TCP/IP for OS/2 - FTP Server ver 19:29:50 on Sep	2 1998 readv
	a isso roddy.
Name (9.24.106.49:root): ivo	
331 Password required for ivo.	
Password:	
230 User ivo logged in.	
Remote system type is OS/2.	
ftp>	

Figure 142. FTP after IP masquerading setup

Congratulations! You have just enabled access from the internal network to the external network by using IP masquerading.

8.7 Setting up IP masquerading on SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux already contains preconfigured scripts to set up IP masquerading properly on system bootup. Make sure you installed the package firewall, which belongs to package series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News) and the package ipchains. You can use YaST to install this package. See 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51 for information about how to accomplish this task.



— Note -

The package firewall has been replaced with a newer version called firewalls in SuSE Linux 6.3. The configuration is done in the /etc/rc.firewall file and the documentation can be found in the user manual and in the /usr/doc/packages/firewalls/SuSEfirewall-technical.txt file.

If you want to configure IP masquerading, open the configuration file /etc/rc.config in a text editor or use YaST to modify the content of this file following the instructions in 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70.

The following variables are used for setting up masquerading on SuSE Linux:

Variable	Description
MSQ_START="yes"	Start IP masquerading on system bootup.
MSQ_NETWORKS="10.0.0.0/24 11.0.0.0/24"	Space-separated list of local networks that should be masqueraded. You can specify an arbitrary number of single IP addresses or networks here.

Table 20. IP masquerading variables in /etc/rc.config

Variable	Description
MSQ_DEV="tr0"	The networking device on which masquerading will take place. This is the device pointing to the outside network.
MSQ_MODULES=" <list modules="" of="">"</list>	Kernel modules for masquerading special network protocols.

These options will be used by the init script /sbin/init.d/masquerade.

If you want to activate masquerading using the definitions in /etc/rc.config, run the following command:

rcmasquerade start

This will apply the IP chains rules to the masquerading device. If MSQ_START is set to yes, IP masquerading will be activated on the next system bootup.

8.8 How IP packets travel through the gateway

In this section we will explain how IP Chains basically works. You can see the path of an IP packet coming into your server in Figure 143.

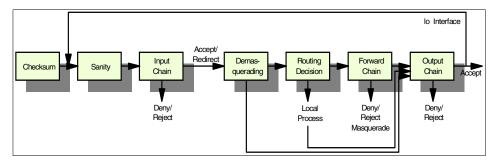


Figure 143. How the packet is travelling

The following are some short descriptions for each stage:

- Checksum test, if the packet is corrupted or not.
- Sanity Malformed packets are denied here.
- Input chain This is the first real packet checking point. Packets can be rejected, denied or accepted.
- Demasquerade If the packet is a reply to a previously masqueraded packet, it is demasqueraded and goes directly to the output chain.

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains 163

- Routing decision The routing code decides if this packet is for a local process or if it should be forwarded to a remote machine.
- Local process a process running on the server can receive packets after this routing decision step, and can then send packets that will go through the routing decision step and the output chain afterwards.
- lo interface if packets from a local process are destined for another local process, they will go through the output chain with interface set to "lo", then they will return to the input chain with interface "lo". The "lo" interface is usually called the loopback interface.
- Local if the packet is not created by the local process, then the forward chain is checked.
- Forward chain this is the checkpoint for all packets passing through this server to another.
- Output chain this a checkpoint for all packets just before they are sent out.

As you can see from Figure 143, you have three places where you can check the packets following specific rules:

- a. Input chain
- b. Forward chain
- c. Output chain

Using the tool /sbin/ipchains you can set up your rules for packet checking.



- Note

By default, all checking policies are set to ACCEPT. This means that all packets can come in, go through, or go out from your server without any restrictions.

You can see the current checking policies by executing:

/sbin/ipchains -L

You will see a screen similar to Figure 144.

[root@client /root]# ipchains -L Chain input (policy ACCEPT): Chain forward (policy ACCEPT): Chain output (policy ACCEPT): [root@client /root]#

Figure 144. Listing the default IP Chains policies

8.9 Using IP Chains

With the <code>/sbin/ipchains</code> command you can create, change or delete your own policies for checking packets or you can modify built-in policies. You cannot delete the built-in chains, but you can append your rules to the existing chains or even create your own chains.

To manage whole chains you can use the parameters described in Table 21.

Table 21.	Parameters	for	manaaina	whole	chains

Parameter	Description
-N	Create a new chain
-X	Delete an empty chain
-P	Change policy for a built-in chain
-L	List rules in a chain
-F	Flush the rules of a chain
-Z	Zero the packets and byte counters on all rules in a chain

For manipulating rules inside a chain, you can use the parameters explained in Table 22.

Table 22. Parameters for managing rules in the chain

Parameter	Description
-A	Append a new rule to a chain
-I	Insert a new rule in a chain at some position
-R	Replace a rule at some position in a chain
-D	Delete a rule at some position in a chain

And there are some more operations for managing masquerading. They are described in Table 23.

Table 23. Parameters for managing masquerading

Parameter	Description
-M -L	List the currently masqueraded connections
-M -S	Set masquerading timeout values

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains 165

8.9.1 How to create a rule

The most common syntax for creating a new rule is:

/sbin/ipchains -A input -s source -p protocol -j action

The parameters are described in Table 24.

Table 24. IPChains parameters

Parameter	Description
-A	Append a new rule to the chain
source	IP address or host name of the source
protocol	Type of the protocol to which one a rule is applied
action	 What will happen with the packet: 1) ACCEPT - packet will be accepted 2) REJECT - packet will be rejected 3) DENY - packet is dropped since it was not received 4) MASQ - packet will be masqueraded 5) REDIRECT - packet is redirected to local port 6) RETURN - fail off the chain immediately



- Note -

Redirecting packets to a local port using the REDIRECT action makes sense only in combination with masquerading for a transparent proxy server.

For example, if you want to create a rule for denying ICMP protocol packets (which are used when you execute the ping command) for a specific IP address, you will do this by executing the command:

/sbin/ipchains -A input -s IP_address -p icmp -j DENY

If you omit the protocol definition, all packet types will be denied. For example, if you want to block access to your machine from the network 11.0.0.0 with the subnet mask 255.255.255.0 you can do this by executing the following command:

/sbin/ipchains -A inout -s 11.0.0.0/255.255.255.0 -j DENY

or by typing:

/sbin/ipchains -A input -s 11.0.0.0/24 -j DENY

As you can see, the subnet mask can be specified with the number of used bits for that mask.

The command for not allowing any traffic from your server to the network 11.0.0.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.0 will look like this:

/sbin/ipchains -A output -d 11.0.0.0/24 -j DENY

We used the "-d" parameter for specifying the destination address here.

8.9.1.1 Using the inversion flag

You can also use the inversion option "!" on some of the parameters. This means that this rule will be applied to everything else except for the parameters specified after "!". For example, if you want to deny packets coming from all IP addresses except from network 10.0.0.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.0, you can do this by executing the following command:

/sbin/ipchains -A input -s ! 10.0.0.0/24 -j DENY



The rules you entered at the command line are not permanent. They will be gone the next time you restart your server.

8.9.2 Making the rules permanent

Note -

There are two scripts available for making the rules permanent. To save all rules you created on the command line, you can execute the following command:

/sbin/ipchains-save > /etc/ipchains.conf

If you execute this command without a file name, the rules will be sent to the standard output.

You can then restore these saved rules by executing the following command:

cat /etc/ipchains.conf | /sbin/ipchains-restore

So if you want your saved rules to be enabled whenever you reboot your system, create a new init script using the template in /sbin/init.d/skeleton which runs the following command in its start section:

cat /etc/ipchains | /sbin/ipchains-restore

Now add the startup of this script to the bootup process using rctab. See 7.3.1, "Activating IBM HTTPD on system bootup" on page 148 for how to add init scripts to the bootup procedure. It should be started immediately after the network scripts have been executed.

Chapter 8. Packet filtering with IP Chains 167

8.10 Sources of additional information

You can find more information on the official Linux IP Firewall Chains page:

http://www.rustcorp.com/linux/ipchains

There is a special how-to about firewalling and masquerading on SuSE Linux:

http://www.bb-zone.com/FWHowTo/index.html

And there is a very good how-to document about firewalling on the Linux Documentation project Web site:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Firewall-HOWTO.html

Chapter 9. DHCP - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

With the ever-decreasing number of available IP addresses along with the headache of maintaining static IPs, DHCP has become a necessity in most TCP/IP computing environments.

9.1 What is DHCP?

DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. When using TCP/IP, a computer system needs a unique IP address to communicate with other computer systems. Without DHCP, the IP address must be entered manually at each computer system. DHCP lets network administrators distribute IP addresses from a central location without having to actively manage each individual address.

With DHCP, IP addresses are distributed through pools, usually broken up by subnet. Leases are given out for a specific time period for each address. The process of managing leases is done by the DHCP server. Once a lease has expired, the DHCP server will try and contact the client or the client will contact the server to renew the lease. If the server cannot contact the client, the IP address is returned to the pool and will be available for the next client in need of an address.

9.2 Why should you use DHCP?

In the past, you had to have a static IP address for every device on a network. With the increasing number of computers accessing the Internet, the pool of available addresses is quickly diminishing. Network administrators can significantly reduce the number of IP addresses they need by using DHCP.

Even on smaller networks, keeping track of individual IP addresses can be a maintenance-intensive task. With DHCP, the server does all of the maintenance, mapping IP addresses to MAC addresses and tracking lease times. Administrators can adjust lease times, expand or reduce pools, and change gateways or DNS addresses, all from a central location.

9.3 Implementation on Linux

In this section we will discuss how to implement a DHCP server on Linux.

At first you have to install the DHCP server binaries, if they are not already installed. You can verify this with rpm on the command line or by using YaST.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

See 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51 for a description of this procedure. The package dhcp is available on the SuSE Linux CD set in the package series n (Network support).

After installing the package, use your text editor of choice to create the configuration file /etc/dhcpd.conf.

The following sample dhcpd.conf file is rather simple. We designate a default lease time of 600 seconds (10 minutes) but we will let clients request up to a 7200-second (2-hour) lease time. We include a recommended subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 and a broadcast address of 192.168.119.255. Other options we specify include a default gateway (router), a nameserver, and the domain name.

We are using a private 192.168.119.0 class C subnet for our subnet specifics. For our DHCP pool we will be giving out the addresses numbered from 15 to 100 for a total of 85 addresses. The rest can be used for static addresses.

default-lease-time 600; max-lease-time 7200; option subnet-mask 255.255.255.0; option broadcast-address 192.168.119.255; option routers 192.168.119.1; option domain-name-servers 192.168.1.128; option domain-name "ibm.com";

subnet 192.168.119.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 { range 192.168.119.15 192.168.119.100;

Most options are pretty self-explanatory. The keyword range in the subnet section defines the range of IP numbers that are being leased to the clients. You are not limited to a single subnet. You are allowed to have shared network specific parameters, multiple subnet specific parameters, group parameters, and host-specific parameters. You can define multiple ranges, assign specific IP addresses based on the hardware address of the client, and specify a WINS server if needed.

More information is available from the dhcpd.conf(5) man page and in the README files below /usr/doc/packages/dhcp.

The DHCP server needs a place to keep track of already assigned leases. They are stored in the file /var/state/dhcp/dhcpd.leases.

To start the DHCP daemon type:

rcdhcp start

If you want to start the DHCP server on bootup, set the variable START_DHCPD in /etc/rc.config to "yes". You may also define a network interface, if you have multiple network interfaces and only want it to listen on one of them. Just set the variable DHCPD_INTERFACE to the desired value (for example eth0). See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for instructions how to modify rc.config with YaST.

9.4 Setting up a DCHP relay agent

The dhcp package also contains a DHCP relay agent called dhcrelay. Since DHCP clients use network broadcasts to query a DHCP server for an IP address, the server usually has to reside on the same network as the client, because routers generally do not forward broadcasts. When a query is received, dhcrelay forwards it to the list of DHCP servers specified. When a reply is received, it is broadcast or unicast on the network from whence the original request came. The DHCP relay agent is preconfigured to run on SuSE Linux and also belongs to the DHCP package. If you want to use it, simply set the following two variables in /etc/rc.config:

```
START_DHCRELAY="yes"
DHCRELAY_SERVERS="102.234.2.1 110.23.4.32"
```

The first variable determines if the relay agent should be started on bootup. The second variable defines the IP addresses of the DHCP server to forward requests to. To start the DHCP relay daemon from the command line, run the following command

rcdhcrelay start

Chapter 9. DHCP - Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol 171

Chapter 10. Sendmail

Communicating with other people is one of the most desirable experiences in human history. Sending electronic mail is a way to communicate with people all over the globe. Electronic mail can be more reliable, cheaper and faster that ordinary mail.

10.1 What is Sendmail?

As you can tell from the name, Sendmail is used to send mail. However, Sendmail is not sending old fashioned mail, but electronic mail, which becomes more important every day. But in spite of that, Sendmail is basically acting as a post office. It receives mail from a sender and passes the mail on to the recipient post office. At the recipient post office, a local postman delivers mail to the recipient mailbox. Sendmail is a powerful Mail Transport Agent (MTA) and is used to pass the mail to another MTA, which can be Sendmail or some other application capable of handling electronic mail. If you are using electronic mail on your daily job, chances are high that every message you send or receive has been handled by a mail server running Sendmail at least once on its way through the Internet.

10.2 What can you do with Sendmail?

With Sendmail your Linux server can become a server for electronic mail. You can handle mail for users of a Linux server locally and users do not have to ask for mail accounts. The users on your Linux server will have their mailboxes locally and they will still be able to send mail to people anywhere. When you set up Sendmail, you can also offer mail service to the users who have accounts on other network servers that do not provide Internet mail service.

10.3 Starting up Sendmail in SuSE LInux

Sendmail is part of the base installation of SuSE Linux and will be installed by default. You can verify this by querying the RPM database with the command rpm -q sendmail. Most likely, it is already running in the background, if you chose the respective Sendmail option during the initial installation (see Figure 42 on page 35). Sendmail will use much of the system values that are already set, so it can run with minimal configuration on your part.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999



Note

In SuSE Linux 6.3, all Sendmail configuration options except for STMP=[yes|no] have been moved from /etc/re.config to /etc/rc.config.d/sendmail.re.config. This is important only if you edit the configuration file via a text editor. If you use YaST to modify these variables, you will not notice any difference.

Standard mail setups require very little work. Once you set up more advanced mail routing features and multiple servers, it can get a little more complicated. Most Sendmail configuration can be done by editing variables in the configuration file /etc/rc.config and by modifying the files in /etc/mail. See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for methods to do this. Do not forget to run *susEconfig*, after you manually changed any Sendmail-related variables in /etc/config. The different variables and their meaning are described in section 7.5, "Let's write - configuration of e-mail" in the SuSE Linux 6.2 manual.

You need to be sure that the Sendmail process is running before you try sending any mail. This can be done with the command:

rcsendmail status

If Sendmail is not running, check the variable SMTP in /etc/rc.config; it should be set to "yes". Now start Sendmail with the following command:

rcsendmail start

10.4 Sending mail to local users

In the SuSE Linux default configuration, you should already be able to send mail to local users on the system. You can test this by using a mail program like pine or the mail command.

mail -s TESTMAIL lxuser

This command will send an e-mail to the local user lxuser with the subject TESTMAIL. You can now enter the message text line by line. To finish the message, enter a single dot on a new line and press Enter. If you now log in as user lxuser, you should receive the message You have new mail. You could now use any mail client to open this message locally or run the mail command without parameters on the command line. Just press Enter to open the first message for reading. Local-running mail clients will directly open the mail spool file, which resides at /var/spool/mail/<username>. If you want to

track the processing of messages on your server, have a look at /var/log/mail, which is Sendmail's log file. This is the first place to check if any errors occur.

10.5 Setting up a simple mail server for a local net

This section explains how to set up a mail server for exchanging mail between users on a local net using a central mail server without a connection to the Internet.

Sendmail is closely related to a functional DNS setup. You should first set up a local name server that knows all participating hosts by host name. See Chapter 5, "DNS - Domain Name System" on page 103 for an example configuration. Alternatively, you can add all hosts to the mail server's /etc/hosts files.

Sendmail on SuSE Linux 6.2 does not allow remote hosts to use the local mail server for sending or relaying mail by default. This is a security feature to reduce the abuse of the mail server for sending out mass e-mail (spam). To allow hosts of your local domain to send mail via this server, you have to add them to the file /etc/mail/access:

myldom.com RELAY my2dom.com RELAY

This would allow all hosts from the domains ${\tt my1dom.\,com}$ and ${\tt my2dom.\,com}$ to use this mail server.

You need to run SuSEconfig and restart Sendmail by running rcsendmail restart to make these changes effective.

Alternatively you can add your local nets to the file /etc/mail/relay-domains:

```
192.168.0
192.168.1
```

This will allow all host from the Class C Networks 192.168.0.0/24 and 192.168.1.0/24 to use the mail server. You will also need to run suscentig and restart Sendmail after modifying this file.

Now your clients should be able to use the IP address or host name of the mail server to send mail using the SMTP protocol. Each user needs to have a user account on the mail server. Your users can now send mail to other users by using their login names as e-maile-mail addresses. You can also create aliases for user names, if the login names are too cryptic. See 10.6, "Using the /etc/aliases file" on page 176 for information about this subject.

Chapter 10. Sendmail 175

However, sending out mail messages is only one part of the story. Your clients need to be able to retrieve the mail from the mail server. The most popular method for retrieving mail from a mail server is the Post Office Protocol (POP). Linux can act as a POP server for your clients; you just have to install the package pop from package series n. This package also includes an IMAP deamon. IMAP is another popular method for remote mail retrieval and processing. After installing the package, configure your clients to use your mail server's IP address as their POP3 server and they should be able to retrieve the messages after providing the user name and password defined on the mail server.

10.6 Using the /etc/aliases file

By using the aliases file you can create aliases for users or groups that you send mail to. They do not even have to be on your system. This way when someone changes their name, their job, or e-mail address you just have to make changes in one place. The file has the format:

alias_name: name1, name2, ...

An example is shown in Figure 145.

dev_group: bjones, susegroup, mygroup@anywhere.not.org susegroup: jsprat, fdown, jbgood

Figure 145. A sample /etc/aliases file

In the above example, an e-mail sent to susegroup will be delivered to the local user accounts of jsprat, fdown and jbgood. This is a simple way to set up small mailing lists.

You can also include commands in the /etc/aliases file so that when e-mail is sent to an alias it runs a program that will carry out some function.

Once you have created the file /etc/aliases, you need to run the command:

newaliases

This will update the /etc/mail/aliases.db file as seen in Figure 146. What is really happening is that mail uses a database, not a flat file for mail names and data. This allows much quicker processing of information.

```
# newaliases
/etc/mail/aliases: 14 aliases, longest 10 bytes, 152 bytes total
```

Figure 146. Running newaliases

10.7 Advanced Sendmail configuration in SuSE Linux

The configuration of Sendmail is highly automated by using YaST and SuSEconfig and should cover the most common purposes. Here is an excerpt of the relevant configuration variables in /etc/rc.config and their description:

```
# do you want to generate a sendmail-configuration /etc/sendmail.cf from
# parameters given in /etc/rc.config ("yes") or do you want to generate
# your /etc/sendmail.cf yourself ("no") ?
# (you could also use /etc/mail/linux.mc to do so.)
#
SENDMAIL TYPE="yes"
#
# smarthost - this host gets all outgoing email from us
# normally used for uucp-connected sites or for dialup connections
# use "uucp-dom:server.uucp.com" to deliver all email to
# "server.uucp.com"
#
SENDMAIL SMARTHOST="relay.suse.de"
#
# sendmail assumes the following space-separated host-names to be
# the local host (this must just be used for names differrent to the
# hostname, for e.g. aliases like www.nowhere.com)
#
SENDMAIL LOCALHOST="localhost hurwitz hurwitz.suse.de"
#
# do not deliver any email locally, but send all email to another host
# this can just be used with another system that has the same users on it
# and you probably also want to set the FROM_HEADER to the other host
SENDMAIL_RELAY="relay.suse.de"
#
# with what parameters should sendmail be started?
# normal sites use "-bd -q30m -om". if you set SENDMAIL_EXPENSIVE and
# you have a dialup ISDN connection, you probably want to set this to
# "-bd -om" and run "sendmail -q" from your crontab.
#
SENDMAIL ARGS="-bd -q30m -om"
#
# sendmail will only queue email in /var/mqueue and will only start
```

Chapter 10. Sendmail 177

```
# to deliver it if "sendmail -q" is run
#
SENDMAIL_EXPENSIVE="no"
#
# sendmail will not try to canonify hostnames in your email
# so much less DNS-queries are send
# you probably want to enable this on a SENDMAIL EXPENSIVE system
#
SENDMAIL NOCANONIFY="no"
#
# have mail daemon on SMTP port? ("yes" or "no")
# needed, if you receive email from other hosts via tcp/ip
# not needed, if you have a uucp-only host or only out-going email.
# If set to "yes", sendmail will be started as daemon.
# As uucp site, you can get along with "SMTP=no", if you make
# a "sendmail -q" call after each poll.
# (As rmail is queuing the mail only and not delivering it...)
#
SMTP="no"
#
# From:-Line in email and News postings
# (otherwise the FQDN is used)
#
FROM_HEADER="suse.de"
```

The following features and configuration files are automatically handled by SuSEconfig:

- User aliases: /etc/aliases
- Access control: /etc/mail/access
- · Address-rewriting outgoing: /etc/mail/genericstable
- · Address-Rewriting incoming: /etc/mail/virtusertable
- Mail transport: /etc/mail/mailertable
- Rewriting In-/Out: /etc/mail/userdb

10.8 Sources of additional information

There are some helpful readme documents on your local filesystem:

/usr/doc/packages/sendmail/README.linux /etc/mail/README

You can find more information on the official Web site of the Sendmail project at:

http://www.sendmail.org

There are also good how-to documents on the Linux Documentation project Web site at:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Mail-User-HOWTO.html http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Mail-Administrator-HOWTO.html

We would also like to mention a very good alternative to Sendmail called Postfix, which has been written by Wietse Venema while working at the IBM T.J. Watson Research Center. Postfix is fast, easy to administer, and secure, while at the same time being Sendmail-compatible enough not to upset your users. The Web site can be found at:

http://www.postfix.org

SuSE Linux also ships Postfix as an RPM package to give you an alternative to Sendmail. Its configuration can also be done by YaST and SuSEconfig and it is very well documented. So, if you are looking for a fast and secure alternative to Sendmail, give Postfix a try.

Chapter 10. Sendmail 179

Chapter 11. NFS - Network File System

Network File System (NFS), developed by Sun Microsystems, allows you to share directories across the network. The directory mounts become transparent to you. You access the mounted directories just like you do with any other directory or filesystem on your computer. The mounting process is the same as for any filesystem or partition that you want to mount on your system. The basic foundation of this is the mount command.

In order to share directories across the network you will need two basic things:

- The system sharing the data must allow you to have access
- The system that is using the data must originate the request and allow the mount to happen

Both concepts will be discussed in this chapter. As usual, we will only cover the basic concepts of NFS. For a more detailed description, see the NFS how-to at http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/NFS-HOWTO.html

11.1 Software installation

Before you can start setting up your NFS server, first you need to verify that the necessary RPM packages have been installed. You can query the RPM database for the required packages with RPM on the command line:

rpm -q nkita nkitb linuxnfs

Package nkita includes the user-level NFS server; it should have been installed by default when you first installed the system. Package nkitb includes the RPC portmapper, and package linuxnfs includes kernel-based NFS server support. Kernel-based NFS is the new NFS implementation on Linux that offers advanced NFS functionality and is multi-threaded. We recommend you use the kernel-based NFS server, and will cover its configuration and installation in this chapter. If one of these packages has not been installed, please install them by following the instructions in 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51. They are located in package series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News).

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999



Note

In SuSE Linux 6.3, the user-space NFS server from the nkita package has been moved to a separate package (package nfsserv in the package series n). The kernel-based NFS server in the linuxnfs package has been renamed to knfsd. None of these are included in the default installation of SuSE Linux 6.3 and have to be installed manually afterwards.

NFS makes use of several daemons (background processes) that need to be started on the server side. These daemons are:

- portmap This is the process that converts RPC (remote procedure call) program numbers into DARPA protocol port numbers. When a client wishes to make an RPC call to a given program number (for example the NFS server), it will first contact portmap on the server machine to determine the port number where RPC packets should be sent.
- rpc.kmountd This handles the exporting of NFS filesystems. It looks in the /etc/exports file to figure out what to do with mount requests from the connecting clients.
- nfsd This is the user level part of the actual NFS server process that delivers data to the clients. Multiple instances of this process can be run in parallel to speed up the service for multiple clients.
- rpc.kstatd This process implements the Network Status Monitor (NSM) RPC protocol. It is used by the NFS file-locking service to implement lock recovery when the NFS server machine crashes and reboots.

11.2 Allowing NFS access to data - the server side configuration

You can give NFS access to a filesystem by setting it up in the /etc/exports file. The file is set up on the exporting server and is the main configuration file for NFS. You can create a sample file entry by opening the /etc/exports file with your favorite editor. Then you can add an entry like:

/usr/local/share myserver.mydomain.com(ro)

This says that the directory /usr/local/share is only accessible to the server myserver.mydomain.com.



Note When exporting a filesystem you need to be sure that the exporting server can recognize and access the server that is in the /etc/exports file. You can verify this with the command

ping server_name

Where $server_name$ is the name of the server you are trying to access. Otherwise the NFS commands may hang.

There are a number of options you can set up in the /etc/exports file. Some of them are explained in Table 25.

Access options		
ro	Only permits read-only access to this share.	
rw	Permits reading and writing. If both ro and rw are specified, rw takes priority.	
root_squash	Accesses from the client's root user account will be mapped to the anonymous user (nobody by default) on the server.	
no_root_squash	Accesses from the client's root account will not be mapped to the anonymous user on the server. Useful for diskless clients.	
squash_uids and squash_gids	Specify a list of UIDs or GIDs that should be subject to anonymous mapping. A valid list of IDs looks like this: squash_uids=0-15,20,25-50	
all_squash	Processes all requests for access as anonymous user.	
anonuid=uid	When the options root_squash or all_squash are set, this user ID will be used to map an anonymous user request to.	
anonuid=gid	When the options root_squash or all_squash are set, this group ID will be used to map an anonymous user request to.	

Table 25. Access options

A sample /etc/exports file is shown in the man pages for exports(5) and below in Figure 147.

Chapter 11. NFS - Network File System 183

/		
(# sample	/etc/exports file
	/	<pre>master(rw) trusty(rw,no_root_squash)</pre>
	/projects	proj*.local.domain(rw)
	/usr	*.local.domain(ro) @trusted(rw)
	/home/joe	pc001(rw,all squash,anonuid=150,anongid=100)
	/pub	(ro, insecure, all_squash)
	/pub/priva	te (noaccess)
۱.		

Figure 147. A sample /etc/exports file

The lines in the sample /etc/exports file are explained as follows:

• # sample /etc/exports file

This is just a comment. Any line or character string can be converted to a comment and disabled by entering a # symbol. Everything from that point to the end of the line is considered to be a comment.

• / master(rw) trusty(rw,no_root_squash)

This says that the root directory (/) is exported to the servers:

master - whose rights are read-write

trusty - whose rights are read-write and the access rights of the client's root user can be the same as the server's root

• /projects proj*.local.domain(rw)

The directory /projects is accessible read-write to all servers whose names match the pattern proj*.local.domain. This includes proj.local.domain, proj1.local.domain, projprojproj.local.domain and so forth.

/usr
 *.local.domain(ro) @trusted(rw)

Any systems whose hostname ends in .local.domain is allowed read-only access. The @trusted netgroup is allowed read-write access.

• /home/joe pc001(rw,all_squash,anonuid=150,anongid=100)

The directory /home/joe is accessible to pc001 for read-write access; all requests for access are processed as an anonymous user. The anonymous UID number is set to 150 and the anonymous group ID is set to 100. This is useful when using a client that is running PCNFS or an equivalent NFS process on the PC. Since the PC IDs do not necessarily map to the UNIX IDs, this allows the proper file attributes to be set.

•/pub

(ro, insecure, all squash)

The directory /pub is accessible as read-only. It says that option in this entry also allows clients with NFS implementations that don't use a reserved port for NFS and process all requests as an anonymous user.

• /pub/private (noaccess)

The directory /pub/private does not allow any NFS access.



NFS uses the numerical user and group IDs for the mapping of files between client and server. Make sure that you use identical user IDs on both systems. If this is not possible, you need to use the nfs.ugidd daemon to map on user names instead of their IDs. When you are using NFS with a lot of users, it is advisable to implement NIS as well to retain consistency of user IDs on the different hosts in your environment.

11.2.1 Starting the NFS server processes

Note

After you have properly set up /etc/exports, you now need to start up the NFS server processes.

If the portmap daemon is not running, you will need to start it up first before you can start up the NFS daemons. You can do this with the following command:

rcrpc start

Once the portmap daemon is running you can start up the NFS daemons with the command:

rcnfsserver start

To stop the NFS server you can use the command:

rcnfsserver stop

You can restart the NFS process with the command:

rcnfs restart

You need to restart the NFS process if you have made changes to the configuration file /etc/exports.

If you want the NFS server to be started on system bootup, you need to activate the startup scripts for these processes. This can be either done by editing the configuration file /etc/rc.config manually with a text editor or by

Chapter 11. NFS - Network File System 185

using YaST. This procedure is described in 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70.

The following variables have to be modified:

Table 26.	Variables in rc.config for NFS server	
-----------	---------------------------------------	--

Variable	Description
START_PORTMAP=yes	Start the portmapper. This is necessary when running an NFS server or NIS.
NFS_SERVER=yes	Start the NFS server on system bootup.
USE_KERNEL_NFSD=yes	Use the kernel-based NFS server instead of the user-mode process (recommended).
USE_KERNEL_NFSD_NUM BER=4	The number of parallel running NFS server threads (kernel-based NFS only).
REEXPORT_NFS=no	Enables you to reexport directories mounted via NFS from another server.

11.3 Accessing data remotely with NFS - the client side

To mount a remote filesystem on your local system, the mount point must exist. The mount process does not create the mount point automatically. To make the mount point, use the Linux mkdir command (a mount point is a regular directory). To make the /mnt/nfsserver mount point you would just do:

mkdir /mnt/nfsserver

Typically you do not need to worry about file attributes and ownerships when making an NFS mount point. The NFS access rights will usually supersede any permissions established for the directory.

Once you have created the mount point then you can use the mount command as follows:

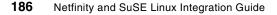
mount -t nfs nfs_host:share_dir local_mount_dir

Where:

-t nfs says to do the mount as an NFS mount. On Linux, this parameter is now optional because if you explicitly specify the directory to be mounted as host:directory the mount command knows that it is an NFS mount.

nfs host is the host that is exporting the filesystem to be shared.

share_dir is the actual directory that is to be shared.



local_mount_dir is the directory on the local host where the remote
directory is going to be mounted. As mentioned earlier, this mount point
must exist.

Chapter 11. NFS - Network File System 187

Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System

In a distributed computing environment, maintenance of password, group, and host files can be a major task. Consistency is possibly the biggest difficulty here. For example, when a user changes his password on one machine, ideally it would be propagated to any other machines he has accounts on. When a network is composed of hundreds or thousands of machines, this convenience becomes a necessity. NIS is one way of addressing some of these problems.

12.1 What is NIS?

The Network Information System (NIS) is a service designed to provide a distributed database system for common configuration files. It was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). NIS servers manage copies of the database files. NIS clients request the information from the NIS server instead of using their own configuration files.

NIS is designed after the client/server model. A NIS server contains data files called maps. These maps are owned by the NIS master and can only be updated by the master. There are NIS slave servers that replicate from the master. When there is a change to a master server's map, this change is then distributed to all the slave servers. Clients are hosts that request information from these maps but are not allowed to modify them locally.

NIS is commonly used in UNIX environments. However, it is also possible to integrate Windows NT clients in a NIS-based environment. NISGINA provides a NIS authenticated interactive logon for Windows NT 4.0 workstations. It supports changing UNIX passwords using a Windows NT dialog and some limited remote registry configuration.

12.2 How can I use NIS?

NIS is typically used to centrally manage commonly replicated configuration files. Examples of common configuration files are:

- /etc/hosts
- /etc/passwd
- /etc/group

NIS can also be used to distribute other files like /etc/hosts or /etc/services, but this will not be covered here.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

12.3 Implementation on Linux

To introduce the concepts behind NIS, we will create a map of our password file kept on the NIS master server. This will allow users to log in to NIS clients without having to maintain a separate account on each system. Centralized administration is a key benefit of using NIS.

A note on security: Before deciding to put NIS in a production environment, please consider the security implications of passing sensitive data across the network. You may wish to take a look at NIS+, which has strong encryption as well as additional maintenance implications. The ypserv daemon on SuSE Linux has been compiled with TCP wrapper support. That means, you have to edit /etc/hosts.allow and /etc/hosts.deny to fit to your network environment. See section "TCP wrappers" in Chapter 18, "Security is a matter of trust" on page 356 in the SuSE Linux 6.2 manual for more information about these files.

At first, you have to make sure that the necessary software packages are installed.

Packages that need to be installed for a NIS server:

- ypserv.rpm
- nkitb.rpm

The following packages need to be installed for a NIS client:

- ypclient.rpm
- nkitb.rpm

You can use YaST to install these packages. See 3.1, "Adding and removing software packages using YaST" on page 51 for information about how to accomplish this task. The above-mentioned packages can be found in package series n - Network-Support (TCP/IP, UUCP, Mail, News).

12.3.1 Server side configuration

A key configuration file for the NIS master server is the /etc/ypserv.conf file. You do not need to modify anything in here for our example; it is listed for the sake of completeness. The following is a sample ypserv.conf we used:

<pre># # ypserv.conf # # # # # # # #</pre>	In this file you can set certain options for the NIS server, and you can deny or restrict access to certain maps based on the originating host. See ypserv.conf(5) for a description of the syntax.		
-	# Some options for ypserv. This things are all not needed, if # you have a Linux net.		
dns: no			
# Note that it	# The following, when uncommented, will give you shadow like passwords. # Note that it will not work if you have slave NIS servers in your # network that do not run the same server as you.		
# Host	: Map : Security : Passwd_mangle		
# # * # *	: passwd.byname : port : yes : passwd.byuid : port : yes		
	y should see the shadow passwords, not secure, since everbody is root and can access ports < 1024 !!!		
*	: shadow.byname : port : ves		
*	: passwd.adjunct.byname : port : yes		
<pre># look for YP S # the security # change the ke # on each NIS s # If you have m</pre>	nt out the next rule, ypserv and rpc.ypxfrd will SECURE and YP_AUTHDES in the maps. This will make check a little bit slower, but you only have to eys on the master server, not the configuration files server. maps with YP_SECURE or YP_AUTHDES, you should create hem above, that's much faster. : * : none		

The other key configuration file is the /var/yp/Makefile. The only map we want to create is the /etc/passwd file, so the others can be commented out if you wish. However, the default Makefile works just fine.

At first you have to define your YP domain. Open the central configuration file /etc/rc.config with your favorite text editor and edit the variable YP_DOMAINNAME="<domain>" to be your domain name. This domain name should not be confused with DNS domain names! The YP domain name can be any generic name.

You also have to define which hosts should be allowed to contact the NIS server. In our example, we will allow all hosts from the local Class C network 192.168.99.0/24 to connect to the server.

Open /etc/hosts.allow in a text editor and add the following line:

Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System 191

It is imperative that the local host also be allowed to connect to the ypserv process via the loopback interface (127.0.0.1).

Now add the following line to /etc/hosts.deny:

ypserv: ALL

NIS requires the RPC portmapper to be started. If it is not already running (you can check this with the command rcrpc status), start it with the command rcrpc start and set the variable START_PORTMAP in /etc/rc.config to yes to enable the automatic startup of the portmap on system bootup.

We are now ready to start the ypserv daemon:

rcypserv start

You should also start the YP password daemon yppasswdd, which enables you to change your user password remotely on the server by running yppasswd on the client:

rcyppasswdd start

To test our NIS setup we can use the rpcinfo command:

rpcinfo -u localhost ypserv

You should see:

program 100004 version 1 ready and waiting program 100004 version 2 ready and waiting

We will now create our NIS maps:

/usr/lib/yp/ypinit -m

The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the local host will be selected as the master server.

<ctrl> d

Select y to confirm and begin building your maps.

Configure your machine as a client (see 12.3.3, "NIS Client configuration" on page 194) and use localhost as your YP server.

If you want to start the NIS server processes ypserv and rpc.yppasswd (used for changing passwords on the server by running yppasswd on the client side) on system bootup, you have to edit the following variables in /etc/rc.config:

```
START_YPSERV="yes"
START_YPPASSWDD="yes'
```

If you want to have slave servers, you have to change the variable NOPUSH=true to NOPUSH=false in /var/yp/Makefile and list the slave servers in /var/yp/ypservers. After you have made these modifications, run the following command to apply the changes:

cd /var/yp ; make

You should also start rpc.ypxfrd on the NIS master to have a faster transfer of your maps to the slave servers by running the following command:

rcypxfrd start

If you want to start this daemon on system bootup, you can do this by setting the variable START_YPXFRD in /etc/rc.config to "yes".

Variable	Description
YP_DOMAINNAME="nis.com"	Your NIS domain name. Do not confuse this with the DNS domain name!
START_YPSERV="yes"	Start the NIS server on bootup.
YP_SERVER="localhost"	The NIS server(s) space-separated IP addresses or host names (defined in /etc/hosts).
CREATE_YP_CONF="yes"	Create /etc/yp.conf automatically.
START_PORTMAP="yes"	Start the RPC portmapper (required for NIS).
START_YPBIND="yes"	Start the YP client process.
START_YPPASSWDD="yes"	Enables you to change your user password remotely from the client.
START_YPXFRD="yes"	Enables faster transfer of maps to the slave servers.

Table 27. YP server variables in /etc/rc.config

12.3.2 Installing a NIS slave server

Set up everything as would you do it for a normal client machine (see 12.3.3, "NIS Client configuration" on page 194). Add "localhost" at the end of YP_SERVERS in /etc/rc.config and run SuSEconfig, if you made the changes manually.

Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System 193

Now start ypbind with the command rcypclient start to have a working connection to the main YP server.

Now run <code>ypinit -s</code> masterhost to transfer all maps from the NIS master masterhost to the local server. You can now start the YP server with the command <code>rcypserv</code> start and restart ypbind to use localhost by running <code>rcypclient</code> restart.

On bootup you should first start ypserv and then ypbind. To check for new maps on a regular basis, add the following line to /etc/crontab:

51 * * * * root /usr/sbin/ypslave 2>/dev/null

Also add this host to /var/yp/ypservers on the YP server and enable pushing of new maps to this slave server as described in 12.3.1, "Server side configuration" on page 190. Whenever a new map is generated on the server, it will call yppush. yppush will connect all slave servers, which will in turn call ypxfr to update their maps.

12.3.3 NIS Client configuration

To test our NIS master server, we need to set up a client to run ypbind. For simplicity we can use the master server to verify our configuration. The same steps should be followed to set up a remote client.

We need to create a /etc/yp.conf file with our entries for the NIS domain and the NIS master server. You do not need to edit this file by hand; SuSEconfig will create this file for you according to your input in YaST or the variables in /etc/rc.config. For our test domain we used nis.com, and our master server name is nismaster.

Start up YaST on the command line and open the menu **System** administration -> Network configuration -> Configure YP client.

YaST - Yet another Setup Tool- YaST Version 1.01 (c) 1994-99 SuSE GmbH			
Language: English Media: CD-ROM ATAPI EIDE /dev/hda Root-Device: /dev/sda3			
General help fo Adjustments of Choose/Install Update system System administ Show README fil Copyright Exit YaST	Kernel ar Network Configur Login co Settings User adm Group ad	Change host name Configure network services Configuration nameserver Configure YP client DHCP Client Configure sendmail Configure ISDN parameters Configure a PPP network Administer remote printers	

Figure 148. YaST: Configure YP client

Press Enter to open the following dialog box.

CONFIGURATION OF YP CLIENT Here your machine can be set up as a YP cl Just enter your YP domain into the first e and your IP address into the second. To deactivate YP services enter an empty YP domain. YP domain: :his.com IP address of the YP server:	
10.21.0.1	:
Continue > < Abort >	

Figure 149. YaST: YP client configuration dialogue

Now enter your YP domain and the IP address(es) of your YP server and click **Continue**.

Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System 195

If you want to make these changes manually, you have to set the following variables in /etc/rc.config:

Table 28	YP client variables in /etc/rc.config
Tuble 20.	

Variable	Description
YP_DOMAINNAME="nis.com"	Your NIS domain name. Do not confuse this with the DNS domain name!
YP_SERVER="nismaster"	The NIS server(s) space separated IP addresses or host names (defined in /etc/hosts).
CREATE_YP_CONF="yes"	Create /etc/yp.conf automatically.
START_PORTMAP="yes"	Start the RPC portmapper (required for NIS)
START_YPBIND="yes"	Start the YP client process

Make sure to run Suseconfig -quick after making changes to these variables. If CREATE_YP_CONF is set to "yes", SuSEconfig will create the corresponding configuration file /etc/yp.conf and will add a single + sign at the end of /etc/passwd and /etc/group. This plus sign indicates that these files are managed by NIS.

If you are using host names instead of IP addresses for YP_SERVER, make sure that the NIS master's host name is listed in /etc/hosts or can be resolved by DNS.

If you do not want to reboot, run domainname <your YP domainname> now. If you need to change the YP domain name on an already running NIS client, it is safer to modify YP_DOMAINNAME in /etc/rc,config and reboot the system. Otherwise chances are high that already running processes might still use the old domain name.

NIS uses RPC for communication. Therefore, the RPC portmapper has to be started first:

rcrpc start

We are now ready to start the ypbind daemon:

rcypclient start

ypwhich will give you the name of the server ypbind is currently connected to. ypwhich -m will give you a list of all available maps. To test our NIS configuration we can also use the ypcat command:

ypcat passwd

Please see the manual page for ypcat for more information about this tool.

You should see output similar to the following figure:

[root@test2 /root]# ypcat passwd john:\$1\$2x1Q62xM\$XtP3v8/gPirZVQKK5/0hC1:501:501::/home/john:/bin/bash ayne:\$1\$2x1Q62xM\$XtP3v8/gPirZVQKK5/0hC1:501:501::/home/ayne:/bin/bash karri:\$1\$S25F27Vc\$gI5Gc6.yDDjwLC42jSwCR1:507:510::/home/karri:/iin/bash otto:\$1\$ctpEVbLK\$W829rX.SndoUTaqWyxCUu.:501:504::/home/otto:/bin/bash bob:\$1\$NLcH9/fP\$zbmyKDzEcH37ENu9hB22C.:502:505::/home/bob:/bin/bash sammy:\$1\$HFgmti3X\$H8d11enyorUkj10Ba8/pm':508:511::/home/sammy:/bin/bash tina:\$1\$xow92Bpk\$CGD5jBgBy5Xe11.pnI2BQ1:504::/home/tina:/bin/bash ivo:\$1\$CH04QoFS\$Hp1C3BW8msWPbL65AT1YE.:505:508::/home/tvo:/bin/bash nancy:\$1\$229axj.Y\$WZcW/evEbx63eMzhzvuwt/:506:509::/home/tvo:/bin/bash steve:\$1\$YFNxznca\$f0F2yRGDu/b83e1C8UF8j.:503:506::/home/korry:/bin/bash

Figure 150. ypcat passwd

Now to really test the machine, log in to a NIS client using an account that is on the NIS master. When you log in, you might experience a successful login, but you will not see your home directory, since the home directory is located on nismaster. This can be fixed by creating a home directory for yourself on the client box as well. Another option would be to use NFS in conjunction with NIS to automatically mount the user's home directories. Using NIS in combination with NFS is common practice; see Chapter 11, "NFS - Network File System" on page 181 for information on how to set up NFS.

12.4 Sources of additional information

For further information or troubleshooting guidelines have a look at the following documentation:

The NIS how-to by Thorsten Kukuk is an excellent place to start:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/NIS-HOWTO.html

It can also be found on your local file system at:

/usr/doc/howto/en/NIS-HOWTO.gz.

The author's home page at http://www.suse.de/~kukuk/ contains some additional documents about NIS that are worth a read.

Managing NFS and NIS by Hal Stern is also a good resource.

Chapter 12. NIS - Network Information System 197

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol

LDAP has become a buzzword in the IT world. The exciting thing about LDAP and directory services is that they can be used for so many purposes. This chapter will give you a brief explanation of what LDAP is, what it can be used for, basic structures, and simple implementation on the Linux OS. This chapter merely scratches the surface of what is actually possible with LDAP.

13.1 What is LDAP?

LDAP stands for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. LDAP has become an Internet standard for directory services that run over TCP/IP. LDAP is a client/server protocol for accessing a directory service. Originally designed as a frontend for X.500 databases, LDAP is now commonly used in a stand-alone capacity. IBM, Netscape, Sun, Novell, Microsoft, and many other companies are incorporating LDAP into their directory structures.

13.1.1 Directory Services

A directory service is the collection of software, hardware, processes, policies, and administrative procedures involved in making the information in a directory available to the users of the directory.

A directory is similar to a database. However, directories and databases differ in the number of times they are searched and updated. Directories are tuned for being searched, while relational databases are geared toward maintaining data with a frequent number of updates.

Examples of directories would be the Yellow Pages, a card catalog, or an address book. Information is organized in a defined hierarchy and given attributes.

When we place a directory online, the data becomes dynamic in the sense that it can be easily updated and cross-referenced. Unlike printed material, any updates that occur are instantaneous for all users.

You can apply security to the directory so that only intended users can view, modify, or create data. This security can be based upon groups, individual users, or any other authentication scheme. The data can also be encrypted.

Directory services typically involve data distribution and replication. The advantages of distributing your directory services are performance, availability, and reliability. For a segmented network, distribution of servers containing the directory data improves performance by reducing network

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

traffic and load on individual servers. By replicating your data on multiple servers you increase availability in case a single server should go down.

13.1.2 X.500

In the mid-1980s, the International Telecommunications Union (ITU, formerly the CCITT) and the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) merged their efforts on directory services standards and created X.500. The X.500 specifications consist of a series of recommendations on the concepts, models, authentication, distribution, attributes, objects, and replication that underlie an X.500 directory service.

Early X.500 implementations used a client access protocol known as DAP. DAP is thick, complicated, and difficult to implement for desktop computers. For all of these reasons other lighter-weight protocols were developed. As predecessors to LDAP, DIXIE and DAS were very successful. Out of this success a group from the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) began work on LDAP. The first Request for Comments (RFC 1487) describing LDAP was released in July 1993.

13.1.3 How you can use LDAP

LDAP allows system and network administrators to manage users, groups, devices, and other data from a central point. IT decision makers can avoid tying themselves to a single vendor for applications and operating systems. Developers can use LDAP-based standards to ensure cross-platform integration.

Some practical applications of LDAP-based directory services include:

- Corporate address book
- User administration
- Domain Name System

13.2 LDAP basics

The LDAP information model is based on objects. Objects can be people, printers, servers, or just about anything you can think of. The most basic unit of the LDAP model is the entry. An entry is a collection of information about an object. Each entry belongs to an object class that determines required and optional attributes. Each attribute has a type and one or more values. The type describes the kind of information contained in the attribute and the value contains the actual data.

13.2.1 LDIF files

An LDIF file is the standard way of representing directory data in a textual format. This format can typically be used for importing and exporting directory data. The following is a sample LDIF file for loading the LDAP directory and adding a user in the Netscape roaming profiles directory:

```
dn: o=ibm.com
objectclass: top
dn: ou=People,o=ibm.com
objectclass: top
objectclass: organizationalUnit
dn: cn=jhaskins, ou=People, o=ibm.com
objectclass: top
objectclass: organizationalUnit
cn: jhaskins
userpassword: secret
dn: ou=Roaming,o=ibm.com
objectclass: top
objectclass: organizationalUnit
dn: nsLIProfileName=jhaskins,ou=Roaming,o=ibm.com
objectclass: top
objectclass: nsLIProfile
nsliprofilename: jhaskins
owner: cn=jhaskins,ou=People,o=ibm.com
```

Each LDAP entry must have a DN or distinguished name. The distinguished name is a unique key that refers to that entry specifically.



- Note

When importing LDIF files, watch for additional white space, spelling, and case. OpenLDAP will treat all of these differently. Authentication errors can usually be linked back to errors with the LDIF file.

13.3 Implementation on Linux

In our example, we will set up an LDAP server for roaming profiles with the Netscape Navigator Web browser. Although SuSE Linux includes an RPM package of OpenLDAP, we have to download a newer version and recompile it with an additional patch.

The patch addresses inconsistencies between OpenLDAP's and Netscape's LDAP implementation regarding the handling of modification time stamps on

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 201

roaming entries. It is only needed for this special example using Netscape's roaming profiles and is generally not necessary for regular LDAP services.

The patch will not be incorporated into later releases of OpenLDAP. OpenLDAP's position is that their current implementation is more consistent with the LDAP precedent and the LDAP standards are not explicit on this issue.

Use YaST to install the OpenLDAP source RPM first. This will unpack the source package openIdap-release.tgz and a patch file into /usr/src/packages/SOURCES. The directory /usr/src/packages/SPECS contains the specfile for this RPM. A specfile contains the building instructions for RPM to create the binary package. We will now apply the patch to the source file and rebuild the package afterwards. This makes sure that the files are registered in the RPM database.

Make sure that the package autoconf is installed as well before you continue.

Download the current OpenLDAP source archive from the FTP site:

ftp://ftp.OpenLDAP.org/pub/OpenLDAP/openldap-release.tgz

Copy it to the directory /usr/src/packages/SOURCES. This will overwrite the original source archive, but this is intentional.

Download the Netscape patch Albert-FitzPatrick-990519.gz from:

ftp://ftp.openldap.org/incoming/Albert-FitzPatrick-990519.tar.gz

Extract and rename it with the following command:

gunzip < Albert-FitzPatrick-990519.tar.gz > roaming.patch

Save it to the directory /usr/src/packages/SOURCES afterwards.

Now enter the directory /usr/src/packages/SOURCES, extract the source package and apply the already included patch with the following commands:

cd /usr/src/packages/SOURCES ln -s openldap-release.tgz ldap.tar.gz pkgmake extract ldap

Apply this additional patch and add it to the already existing patch before installation with the following commands:

cd ldap/servers/slapd ci -i -t-no-comment add.c patch < ../../roaming.patch

(answer the question "Get file add.c from RCS with lock? [y]" with y)

```
cd ../..
pgkmake diff
```

The roaming patch has now been added to the existing SuSE-applied changes. You can verify this by looking at the end of the Idap.dif file. It should now contain the patch for add.c.

Now we need to correct the version number of this package in the spec file. Open /usr/src/packages/SPECS/openIdap.spec in your favorite text editor. Now look for the line beginning with Version: and correct the version number according to the current OpenLDAP release. Check the OpenLDAP Web site for this information (1.2.7 at the time of writing).

You can now rebuild the RPM package with the following command:

rpm --bb /usr/src/packages/SPECS/open1dap.spec

After the RPM has been successfully built, you will find it in the directory:

/usr/src/packages/RPMS/i386/

Install it with rpm on the command line:

rrpm -Uhv --force /usr/src/packages/RPMS/i386/openldap*.rpm SuSEconfig -quick

The patched version of OpenLDAP is now installed.

13.3.1 Roaming Profiles for Netscape

In order to set up roaming profiles, we need the Netscape directory schema. You can download the roaming-073099.tar.gz file, which contains the files slapd.oc.conf, slapd.at.conf, and an excellent sample slapd.conf, from:

http://www.openldap.org/incoming/roaming-073099.tar.gz

Or make the following additions to slapd.oc.conf and slapd.ac.conf. Append the following lines to the end of the file /etc/openIdap/slapd.oc.conf:

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 203

```
#from netscape to implement roaming access...
objectclass nsLIPtr
#
        oid 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.74
        requires
                objectclass
        allows
                nsLIPtrURL,
                owner
objectclass nsLIProfile
         oid 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.75
#
        requires
                objectclass,
                nsLIProfileName
        allows
                nsLIPrefs,
                uid,
                owner
objectclass nsLIProfileElement
#
         oid 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.76
        requires
                objectclass,
                nsLIElementType
        allows
                owner,
                nsLIData
                nsLIVersion
objectclass nsLIServer
         oid 2.16.840.1.113730.3.2.77
#
        requires
                objectclass,
                serverhostname
        allows
                description,
                cn,
                nsServerPort,
                nsLIServerType,
                serverroot
```



- Note -

Make sure that you comment out the oid entries in the slapd.oc.conf.

Now add the following lines at the end of /etc/openIdap/slapd.at.conf:

```
204 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide
```

ns-mcd-li-schema.conf # # Netscape Mission Control Desktop Roaming Access schema # attribute nsLIPtrURL 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.399 ces attribute nsLIPrefs 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.400 ces attribute nsLIProfileName 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.401 cis attribute nsLIData 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.402 bin attribute nsLIElementType attribute nsLIServerType attribute nsLIVersion 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.403 cis 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.404 cis attribute nsLIVersion 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.405 bin attribute nsServerPort 2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.280 cis

More information on the Netscape directory schema and roaming profiles can be found at:

http://help.netscape.com/products/client/communicator/manual_roaming2.h
tml

Modify your slapd.conf to support roaming profiles.

Now we will create the /etc/openIdap/slapd.conf file. Replace ibm.com with the name of your organization.

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 205

```
# See slapd.conf(5) for details on configuration options.
# This file should NOT be world readable.
#
include /etc/openldap/slapd.at.conf
include /etc/openldap/slapd.oc.conf
schemacheck
             off
lastmod
             on
#referral ldap://ldap.itd.umich.edu
pidfile /var/run/slapd.pid
argsfile /var/state/slapd.args
****
# ldbm database definitions
****
database 1dbm
suffix "o=ibm.com"
directory /var/tmp
rootdn "cn=root, o=ibm.com"
rootpw secret
# cleartext passwords, especially for the rootdn, should
# be avoid. See slapd.conf(5) for details.
access to * by * write
access to * by * compare
access to * by * read
```



Stop

The permissions specified in the last three lines are extremely insecure and should only be used for testing purposes. See the slapd.conf(5) man page for more information about setting up appropriate permissions for your environment.

13.3.2 Start OpenLDAP

To start slapd, simply run <code>rcldap start</code> and check /var/log/messages for unusual warnings. If the start of <code>slapd</code> was successful, you should see a message similar to this:

ct 28 09:46:14 SuSE slapd[1193]: slapd starting

If you want OpenLDAP to be started on bootup, set the variable START_LDAP in /etc/rc.config to "yes". See 3.6, "Changing the configuration file with YaST" on page 70 for how to do this.

206 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

With slapd successfully running, we now need to load the initial database and create an LDIF file like the one on page 201. Replace <code>jhaskins</code> with your user name and <code>ibm.com</code> with your organization name.

Once you have created the entries.ldif file, load the LDAP server.

ldapadd -D "cn=root, o=ibm.com" -w secret -f entries.ldif

13.3.3 Configuring Netscape

The final step is to configure your Netscape browser.



Figure 151. Configuring your browser

From the Edit drop-down menu, select Preferences.

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 207

Category:		
Appearance	Roaming Access	Enter your server login information
Fonts		
Navigator Languages Applications Smart Browsing Mail & Newsgroups Roaming Access Server Information Item Selection Offline Advanced	from any place on the networ Your user profile information to Roaming Access server each the server on shutdown.	will then be retrieved from your h time on startup and transferred to cess for this profile nation to be used when retrieving aming Access server.
	10	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 152. Configuring Netscape

Click the **Roaming User** (Netscape for Linux) or **Roaming Access** (Netscape for Windows) tab.

Click the Enable Roaming access for this profile check box.

Enter the user name.

<u>Category:</u>	
Category: Appearance Fonts Colors Navigator Languages Applications Smart Browsing Mail & Newsgroups Roaming Access Server Information Item Selection Composer Offline Advanced	
	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 153. Configuring Netscape 2

Click Server Information.

Put the following into the LDAP Directory Server Address field:

ldap://linuxbox/nsLIProfilename=\$USERID, ou=Roaming, o=ibm.com

Replace linuxbox with the host name of the OpenLDAP server and ibm.com with the name of your organization (specified in the slapd.conf)

Enter the following into the LDAP Directory Server User DN field:

cn=\$USERID, ou=People, o=ibm.com

Chapter 13. LDAP - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol 209

Category:		
Appearance Fonts Colors Navigator Applications Smart Browsing Additional Receiver Information Item Selection Offline Advanced		Specify which items to transfer
	[OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 154. Configuring Netscape 3

Click Item Selection.

Select the items you would like to synchronize with the OpenLDAP server.

Restart Netscape and you are all set.

13.4 Sources of additional information

LDAP how-tos are available from the Linux Documentation project Web site at:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/LDAP-HOWTO.html

The OpenLDAP Web site is the key source of information about OpenLDAP, including a post from Phil Allred regarding Netscape Roaming Profiles and OpenLDAP.

http://www.OpenLDAP.org

Get "Don't make me LDAP you - Lightweight Directory Access Protocol: What it is, why you want it" from the LinuxWorld Web site at:

http://www.linuxworld.com/linuxworld/lw-1999-03/lw-03-uptime.html

Understanding and Deploying LDAP Directory Services, by Timothy Howes, Mark Smith, and Gordon Good, published by Macmillan, 1999.

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux

Linux offers a great variety of ways to optimize your system for maximum performance. Apart from the general fact that it is always good to have as much RAM and the fastest CPU as possible, there are some additional parameters to tune a Linux system. This section is intended as a collection of useful hints and tools, but without getting into too much detail about them. Please refer to the respective documentation and references. You should also note that using some of these hints may render your system unstable; use them at your own risk and only if you know what you are doing.

14.1 General configuration hints

These are some general tips for tweaking your system to maximize performance.

Recompile your programs and the Linux kernel with all available compiler optimization flags (for example, -funroll-loops, -fomit-frame-pointer, -06) and all architecture-specific compiler options for your hardware architecture. This may increase the size of binaries or make them unable to run on some processors, but you can gain a lot of speed in comparison with the binaries shipped in the distribution. Alternatively you could use special compilers for your architecture (for example, pgcc), which offer even more sophisticated optimization options.

Create swap partitions of equal priority but different hard disk drives to allow load balancing. Please note that it need to be different devices! Using two different partitions on one hard disk will have the reverse effect. Even better, try to avoid swapping at all by adding more memory. A busy server should never need to swap, as this would severely degrade the overall performance.

If you are running a heavily loaded server with a lot of parallel processes, you might run into the Linux kernel's limit of running processes (512 by default). This maximum number of tasks is configurable in the kernel sources, so you have to recompile the kernel after changing this value. This value is defined in the file /usr/src/linux/include/linux/tasks.h:

#define NR_TASKS 512

You can increase this value up to 4090 processes, if necessary.

Linux offers a filesystem mount option that is called noatime. The atime is a timestamp of the last access time (reading and writing) for a certain file. This option can be added to the mount options in the /etc/fstab file. When a

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

filesystem is mounted with this option, read accesses to files will no longer result in an update of the inode access time information. This information is usually not very interesting on a file or Web server, so the lack of updates to this field is not relevant. The performance advantage of the noatime flag is that it suppresses write operations to the filesystem for files that are simply being read. Since these write accesses add additional overhead, this can result in measurable performance gains. Instead of specifying this as a mount option that would apply to the whole filesystem, you can use the command chattr to set this flag on single files or directories. For example:

chattr -R +A /var/spool/news

This command would set the noatime flag recursively on all files below the news spool directory (a very common practice on busy news servers). See the manual page chattr(1) for more information.

You can use the hdparm tool to tune some hard disk drive parameters. Unfortunately most of them only work on IDE systems (which should be avoided in server systems, anyway), but the option -a works for SCSI, too. The manual page describes it as follows: "This option is used to get/set the sector count for filesystem read-ahead. This is used to improve performance in sequential reads of large files, by prefetching additional blocks in anticipation of them being needed by the running task. The default setting is 8 sectors (4 KB). This value seems good for most purposes, but in a system where most file accesses are random seeks, a smaller setting might provide better performance. Also, many drives have a separate built-in read-ahead function, which alleviates the need for a filesystem read-ahead in many situations." For example, to set the sector count read-ahead of your first SCSI disk to 4 sectors (2 KB), you would use the following command:

hdparm -a 4 /dev/sda

See the hdparm manual page for a complete list of available options.

The freely available tool Powertweak is a nice utility for tuning PCI chipset optimizations. It is expected to be extended to be a general performance tweaking tool similar to Powertweak on Microsoft Windows. See http://linux.powertweak.com for more information about it.

You should also disable all unused services and daemons, especially network-related services. This has several advantages: fewer open services need fewer system resources (file descriptors, memory) and the system is less vulnerable to external attacks against known security holes. A good starting point is the /etc/inetd.conf file. Comment out all services you do not need, or disable inetd completely. The Linux /proc filesystem offers a lot of entry points for run-time optimization without recompiling the kernel. This directory does not physically exist on your hard drive; it is mapped as a virtual directory. Most of the files contained herein are readable and contain various system information. Other files can be edited with a regular text editor to set a certain kernel parameter. See /usr/src/linux/Documentation/sysctl/README in the Linux kernel sources for a detailed description of the tunable parameters (including filesystem, virtual memory, etc.).

There are some special TCP options that can be disabled in a local network with high signal quality and bandwidth, since they are mostly intended for lossy connections (see /usr/src/linux/net/TUNABLE in the Linux kernel sources for a detailed list):

To disable TCP timestamps, enter:

echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_timestamps

To disable window scaling, enter:

echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_window_scaling

To disable selective acknowledgments, enter:

echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_sack

To tune the default and maximum window size (only if you know what you are doing), enter:

/proc/sys/net/core/rmem_default - default receive window
<pre>/proc/sys/net/core/rmem_max - maximum receive window</pre>
/proc/sys/net/core/wmem_default - default send window
<pre>/proc/sys/net/core/wmem_max - maximum send window</pre>

The following Web sites offer a lot of additional helpful hints about tuning and performance issues on Linux:

http://tune.linux.com http://www.tunelinux.com

14.2 System monitoring and performance test tools

This section introduces a small collection of useful tools, among the many available, to monitor your Linux system or to gather system information.

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 213

To get an overview about all running processes and the system load, run the command top in a terminal session.

34 pro	Bam up Doesses:	33 sl	eepiı	ng, 1	runni	ng, Ø	zombi	e, Ø :	stopp	ed		
CPU st	tates: 🛙	1.0% u:	ser,	1.62	:syst	em, 🛛	1.0% n	ice,	98.4%	idle		
Mem:	62968K	av, !	59196	5K use	ed,	3772K	free,	174	08K s	hrd,	15164}	{ buff
Swan:	125996K									-		cached
		,	-		,							
- PID	USER	PRI	ΝI	SIZE	RSS	SHARE	STAT	LIR	ZCPU	×MEM	TIME	COMMAND
	root	20	Ø	792	792	628		Ø	1.6	1.2	0:01	
	root	0	õ	196	196	168		õ	0.0	0.3	0:04	
	root	õ	õ	Ĩ	0		S₩	õ	0.0	0.0		kflushd
	root	õ	õ	Õ	õ	õ	S₩	õ	0.0	0.0		kupdate
	root	ă	õ	õ	ŏ	õ	S₩	ŏ	0.0	0.0		kpiod
_	root	õ	õ	õ	ŏ	õ	S₩	õ	0.0	0.0		kswapd
	root	õ	õ	õ	ŏ	õ	S₩	ŏ	0.0	0.0		md thread
_	root	õ	õ	648	648	536		õ	0.0	1.0		syslogd
	root	õ	õ	816	816	392	-	õ	0.0	1.2		klogd
116		õ	õ	552	552	456		õ	0.0	0.8	0:00	
	root	õ	õ	452	452	376		õ	0.0	0.7	0:00	
	root	Ő	õ		1592	1488		Ö	0.0	2.5		httpd
	root	õ	õ	624	624	528		õ	0.0	0.9	0:00	
	wwwrun	ด้	õ	1592		1500		õ	0.0	2.5		httpd
	พพพานก พพพานก	Ø	Ø	1592		1500		Ø	0.0	2.5		httpd
	www.run	0 0	Ø	1592		1500	-	Ø	0.0	2.5		httpd
	wwwrun	Ø	Ø	1592		1500		Ö	0.0	2.5		httpd
	wwwrun	0	Ø		1592			0	0.0	2.5		httpd
141	wwwrun	0	Ø	1227	1222	1500	ა	Ø	0.0	2.5	0:00	πτιμα

Figure 155. Example output of top

Top updates the process list in regular intervals. Press "?" to get an online help screen about the available parameters. To change the refresh interval, press "s" and enter the desired number of seconds between each update. If you want to sort the processes by memory consumption, press "m". To exit from top, press "q". This will bring you back to the command line.

Similar to top, ${\tt pstree}$ displays a hierarchical structure of all currently running processes:

```
SuSE:~ # pstree
init-+-atd
      -cron
      -dhclient
      -gpm
      -httpd---22*[httpd]
      -httpd---httpd
      -inetd-+-in.telnetd---login---bash---make---make---make---make---gcc+-as
                                                                                |-cc1
`-cpp
              `-in.telnetd---login---bash---pstree
      -kflushd
      -klogd
      -kpiod
      -kswapd
      -kupdate
      -login---bash
      -lpd
      -md thread
      -5* [mingetty]
      -nmbd
      -nscd---nscd---5* [nscd]
      -sendmail
      -smbd---smbd
      -syslogd
```

If you are running a graphical desktop such as KDE, you can also use window-based tools like KTop, the KDE Task Manager:

	erformance	Meter					
Running Processes Name	PID User	ID CPU	Time	Nice Status	 Memory	Resident.	Shared Command -
Ainit	1root	0,00%	0:05	0 Sleep	368	208	0 init
K kpanel	5918 root	0.00%	0:04	0Sleep	6704	4424	0kpanel
	5915 root	0.00%	0:01	0 Sleep	6092	3656	Okrootwm
	5912 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	6444	3640	0 kbgndwm
🖻 📳 kfm	5906 root	0,00%	0:02	0Sleep	8456	4728	Okfm
- 🗟 ksnapshot	6022 root	0,56%	0:03	0Sleep	7300	4684	0ksnapshot
🖻 🖳 kvt	5940 root	0,00%	0:01	0Sleep	6468	4024	0 kvt
	5941 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	2300	1352	0 bash
- 🕲 ktop	5938 root	25,99%	0:29	0 Run	6372	4256	Oktop
- 💮 mingetty	947 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	1112	460	1044/sbin/min
🖻 💮 inetd	935 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	1440	528	0/usr/sbin
🖻 🎆 in.telnetd	948 root	0,00%	0:01	0Sleep	1472	684	Otelnetd:
🖻 🚅 login	949 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	1696	1040	0login
🖻 🔁 bash	950 root	0,00%	0:00	0Sleep	2288	848	0-bash
ⁱ F skw	n 5893 root	1,12%	0:05	0Sleep	6608	4248	0 kwm -
1							<u>ا</u> ا
							_

Figure 156. KDE Task Manager: Process List window

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 215

KTop offers two different views. It can either display a process list (similar to top and pstree), or you can switch to the performance meter, which displays the system load and memory usage over a longer time period.

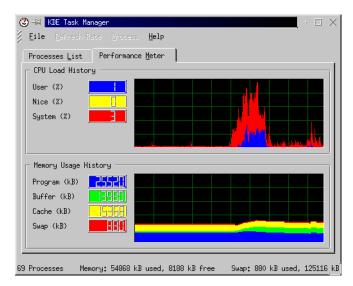


Figure 157. KDE task manager: performance meter

The Lothar project currently works on a very sophisticated hardware detection and configuration tool. The Web site can be found at http://www.linux-mandrake.com/lothar/. Figure 158 shows Lothar's graphical front end.

216 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

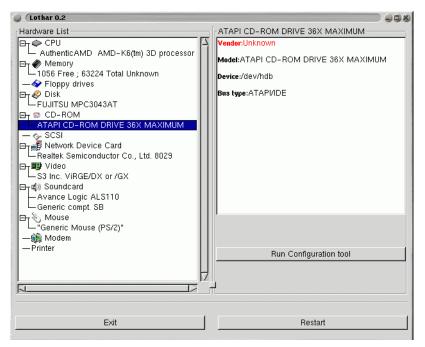


Figure 158. Lothar main screen

The KDE control center also gives you a lot of information about your system by reading a number of informative files in the /proc filesystem. They can also be displayed in a regular text viewer (for example more, less or cat).

The /proc/cpuinfo file contains information about your CPU (that is, vendor, Mhz, flags like mmx). For example:

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 217

Suse:~ # cat /pi	roc/cpuinfo
processor	: 0
vendor id	: GenuineIntel
cpu family	: 6
model	: 5
model name	: Pentium II (Deschutes)
stepping	: 2
cpu MHz	: 513.953346
cache size	: 512 KB
fdiv_bug	: no
hlt_bug	: no
sep_bug	: no
f00f_bug	
coma_bug	: no
fpu	: yes
fpu_exception	: yes
cpuid level	: 2
wp	: yes
flags	: fpu vme de pse tsc msr pae mce cx8 sep mtrr pge mca cmov pat p
se36 mmx osfxsr	
bogomips	: 313.75

The /proc/interrupts file lists all interrupts used by Linux. Note that this shows interrupts only from devices that have been detected by the kernel! If a device will not be detected because of a resource conflict, you have to resolve this conflict manually (for example, by changing the BIOS setup). For example:

(SuSE:~	# cat /proc/	/interrupts	
		CPU0		
	0:	548029	XT-PIC	timer
	1:	557	XT-PIC	keyboard
	2:	0	XT-PIC	cascade
	8:	2	XT-PIC	rtc
	9:	371	XT-PIC	PCnet/PCI II 79C970A
	12:	68	XT-PIC	PS/2 Mouse
	13:	0	XT-PIC	fpu
	14:	198235	XT-PIC	ide0
	15:	3	XT-PIC	idel
	NMI:	0		

The /proc/ioports file contains all allocated device I/O ports. The same note as for interrupts applies here. Only devices that are actually detected by the kernel are listed here. For example:

1			
(SuSE:~ # c	cat	t /proc/ioports
l	0000-001f	:	dmal
l	0020-003f	:	pic1
l	0040-005f	:	timer
l	0060-006f	:	keyboard
l	0070-007f	:	rtc
l	0080-008f	:	dma page reg
l	00a0-00bf	:	pic2
l	00c0-00df	:	dma2
l	00f0-00ff	:	fpu
l	0170-0177	:	ide1
l	01f0-01f7	:	ide0
l	02e8-02ef	:	serial (auto)
l	02f8-02ff	:	serial (auto)
l	0376-0376	:	ide1
l	03c0-03df	:	vga+
l	03e8-03ef	:	serial (auto)
l	03£6-03£6	:	ide0
l	03f8-03ff	:	serial (auto)
1	1000-101f	:	PCnet/PCI II 79C970A
1	1020-1027	:	ide0
l	1028-102f	:	ide1
•			

The /proc/meminfo file displays info about memory (for example, memory used, free, swap size). You can also use the free command to display this information. For example:

SuSE:~ # cat ,	/proc/memin	fo					
total	: used:	free:	shared:	buffers:	cached:		
Mem: 64569344	4 62578688	1990656	54308864	18792448	27807744		
Swap: 12901990	04 102400	1289175	04				
MemTotal:	63056 kB						
MemFree:	1944 kB						
MemShared:	53036 kB						
Buffers:	18352 kB						
Cached:	27156 kB						
SwapTotal:	125996 kB						
SwapFree:	125896 kB						
SuSE:~ # free							
t	total	used	free	shared	d buffer	s cached	
Mem: 6	63056	61124	1932	53068	3 1835	2 27164	
-/+ buffers/ca	ache:	15608	47448				
Swap: 12	25996	100	125896				

The /proc/mounts file shows all currently mounted partitions. The mount command without parameters will display similar information. For example:

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 219

SuSE:~ # cat /proc/mounts /dev/root / ext2 rw 0 0 proc /proc proc rw 0 0 /dev/hdal /boot ext2 rw 0 0 devpts /dev/pts devpts rw 0 0 SuSE:~ # mount /dev/hda3 on / type ext2 (rw) proc on /proc type proc (rw) /dev/hda1 on /boot type ext2 (rw) devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=0620)

The /proc/partitions file displays all existing partitions on all devices. You can also use fdisk -1 to display this information. For example:

(。	11CF.	# cat	/proc/pa	rtitio	nc			
			#blocks		110			
	ajor		#DIOCKS	name				
	3	0	1023907	hda				
	3	1	6016	hda1				
			126000	hda2				
	3	3	891072	hda3				
	3	64	1023907	hđb				
	3	65	1023088	hdb1				
	22	0 1	073741823	hdc				
s	uSE:~	# fdi	sk -l					
D	isk /	dev/hda	a: 32 hea	ds, 63	sector	s, 1015 cyl	inde	rs
U	nits	= cyli	nders of :	2016 *	512 by	tes		
		-			-			
	Dev	rice Bo	ot Sta	rt	End	Blocks	Id	System
/	dev/h	ida1 ·	*	1	6	6016+	83	Linux
/	dev/h	ida2		7	131	126000	82	Linux swap
/	dev/h	ida3	1	32	1015	891072	83	Linux
D	isk /	dev/hdl	b: 32 head	ds, 63	sector	s, 1015 cyl	inde	rs
ט	nits	= cyli	nders of :	2016 *	512 by	tes		
		-			-			
	Dev	rice Bo	ot Sta	rt	End	Blocks	Id	System
1	dev/h	idb1		1	1015	1023088+	83	Linux

The /proc/pci file gives information about all your PCI devices. You can also use the lspci command. Please note that /proc/pci is obsolete and will be replaced by /proc/bus/pci/* in the future. For example:

```
SuSE:~ # cat /proc/pci
PCI devices found:
 Bus 0, device 0, function 0:
   Host bridge: Intel 82439TX (rev 1).
     Medium devsel. Master Capable. No bursts.
 Bus 0, device 7, function 0:
   ISA bridge: Intel 82371AB PIIX4 ISA (rev 8).
     Medium devsel. Master Capable. No bursts.
 Bus 0, device 7, function 1:
   IDE interface: Intel 82371AB PIIX4 IDE (rev 1).
     Medium devsel. Fast back-to-back capable. Master Capable. Latency=64.
     I/O at 0x1020 [0x1021].
 Bus 0, device 15, function 0:
   Display controller: Unknown vendor Unknown device (rev 0).
     Vendor id=15ad. Device id=710.
     Medium devsel. Fast back-to-back capable. Master Capable. Latency=64.
     I/O at 0x1030 [0x1031].
     Non-prefetchable 32 bit memory at 0xfc000000 [0xfc000000].
     Non-prefetchable 32 bit memory at 0xfb000000 [0xfb000000].
 Bus 0, device 16, function 0:
   Ethernet controller: AMD 79C970 (rev 16).
     Medium devsel. Fast back-to-back capable. IRQ 9. Master Capable. Laten
cy=64. Min Gnt=6.Max Lat=255.
     I/O at 0x1000 [0x1001].
     Non-prefetchable 32 bit memory at 0xfd000000 [0xfd000000].
SuSE:~ # lspci
00:00.0 Host bridge: Intel Corporation 430TX - 82439TX MTXC (rev 01)
00:07.0 ISA bridge: Intel Corporation 82371AB PIIX4 ISA (rev 08)
00:07.1 IDE interface: Intel Corporation 82371AB PIIX4 IDE (rev 01)
00:0f.0 Display controller: Unknown device 15ad:0710
00:10.0 Ethernet controller: Advanced Micro Devices 79c970 [PCnet LANCE] (rev 10
```

The /proc/swaps file displays information about all active swap partitions. For example:

SuSE:~ # cat /proc/swaps					
Filename	Туре	Size	Used	Priority	
/dev/hda2	partition	125996	56	-1	

The /proc/version file displays some version information about the Linux kernel. The command uname -a will display similar information. For example:

```
SuSE:~ # cat /proc/version
Linux version 2.2.10 (root@Mandelbrot.suse.de) (gcc version 2.7.2.3) #1 Tue Jul
20 16:32:24 MEST 1999
SuSE:~ # uname -a
Linux SuSE 2.2.10 #1 Tue Jul 20 16:32:24 MEST 1999 i686 unknown
```

Chapter 14. General performance tools in Linux 221

If you want to obtain some more information about your SCSI devices, have a look at the files below /proc/scsi.

A tool that is also gathering system information from the /proc filesystem is vmstat. It reports information about processes, memory, paging, block IO, traps, and CPU activity. The first report produced gives averages since the last reboot. Additional reports give information on a sampling period of length delay. The process and memory reports are instantaneous in either case. vmstat is very helpful for logging CPU and memory usage over a longer period of time.

Apart from configuring numerous parameters of your hard drive, the command hdparm can also be used to perform hard disk performance tests with the command hdparm -tT <device>. For example:

```
SuSE:~ # hdparm -tT /dev/hda
/dev/hda:
Timing buffer-cache reads: 64 MB in 0.68 seconds =94.12 MB/sec
Timing buffered disk reads: 32 MB in 29.51 seconds = 1.08 MB/
SuSE:~ # hdparm -c1 /dev/hda
/dev/hda:
setting 32-bit I/O support flag to 1
I/O support = 1 (32-bit)
SuSE:~ # hdparm -tT /dev/hda
/dev/hda:
Timing buffer-cache reads: 64 MB in 0.67 seconds =95.52 MB/sec
Timing buffered disk reads: 32 MB in 12.92 seconds = 2.48 MB/sec
```

Another popular hard disk performance test is bonnie, found at http://www.textuality.com/bonnie/ (an RPM package for SuSE Linux is included in the distribution). Note, however, that these tests are mostly useful for testing different parameter settings on one machine as a relative measure, not as a comparison between different systems.

To test the throughput of your network, you can either use netperf, found at
http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html or bing (included in SuSE Linux).

Chapter 15. Backup and recovery with BRU

It may seem obvious that backing up and restoring data quickly is critical, but many administrators leave this task at the end of the "to do" list until it is too late. With the ease of use of the commercially available BRU utility, there is no need to wait.

15.1 What is BRU?

BRU is a backup and restore utility with significant enhancements over other common utilities such as tar, cpio, volcopy and dump. BRU is designed to work with most backup devices, including cartridge, 4mm DAT, 8mm (Exabyte) and 9-track tape drives.

BRU includes incremental backups, full backups, multivolume archives, distribution and updates, error detection and recovery, random access capabilities, file comparisons, file overwrite protection, and increased speed over previous versions.

15.2 Installing BRU

Before we begin, we need to know:

- 1. The device name of our tape drive. Typically under SuSE Linux this will be /dev/st0.
- 2. The size of our backup media in megabytes.

To install BRU from the floppy drive with the tar command:

cd /tmp tar xvf /dev/fd0 ./install

Follow the prompts regarding readme files and licenses until you come to the following window:

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

Figure 159. Selecting your backup devices

Select all of your backup devices and then enter o when you are done.

You will now be asked to enter your BRU serial number.

When input correctly, you will be asked if you would like to install the X11 interface.

Select Y.

The installation program needs to create an xbru directory. You can select a path or accept the default /usr/local/.

The installation program will install executables in a user-specified directory. The default is /usr/local/bin.



- Note -

The key configuration file is: /etc/brutab. Consult the *BRU User's Guide* for advanced information. Do not edit unless you know what your doing.

BRU is now installed.

15.3 Basic commands

The basic command structure for BRU is:

bru modes [control options] [selection options] [files]

Where bru is the command or program followed by the mode specifying backup, restore, or various queries. Control options specify devices and buffer size. Selection options control which files or directories to work with. Files is the specified target of the bru command.

15.3.1 Basic backup

To back up the single file /home/ayne/.profile:

bru -c -vvvv -G /home/ayne/.profile

To back up the complete directory /home/ayne:

bru -c -vvvv -G /home/ayne

To back up the entire system:

bru -c -vvvv -G /

15.3.2 Basic restore

To restore the single file /home/ayne/.profile:

bru -x -vvvv -ua -w /home/ayne/.profile

To restore the complete directory /home/ayne:

bru -x -vvvv -ua -w /home/ayne

To restore the entire system:

bru -x -vvvv -ua -w /

15.3.3 Basic verification and listing commands

The -i mode can be used in conjunction with a backup command or by itself. The -i mode reads each block of data and verifies the checksum of the block. If used with the verbosity options (-vvvv), BRU will give a complete listing of the contents of an archive.

The -G mode displays the archive header block, which contains detailed information on the archive including the command used to create the archive. See the *BRU User's Guide* for more information.

Chapter 15. Backup and recovery with BRU 225

The -gg mode displays the contents of the on-tape directory. This mode can only be used if the archive was created with the -g option.

15.4 X Interface

To use BRU's X interface, you will need to be in an X-Windows environment. Type:

xbru

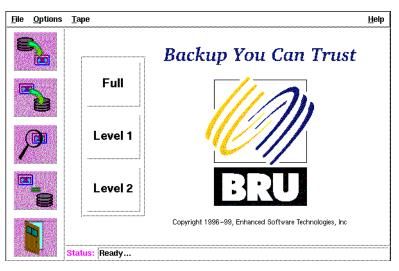


Figure 160. XBRU

You will see a figure similar to Figure 160.

From this interface you can:

- Create and restore backups.
- Create save, and load backup definitions.
- · Schedule backups.
- List and verify the contents of archives.
- View the BRU log.

15.4.1 The big buttons

The three main buttons (Full, Level 1, and Level 2) are shortcuts to various levels of backing up your system, directories, or individual files.

226 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

- Select **Full** to back up all the files in the user's home directory, or if the user is root, the entire system.
- Select **Level 1** to execute a backup for the same files as listed above, on the condition that files have been modified since the previous full backup. If no previous full backup has been done, this will be considered a full backup.
- Select **Level 2** to execute a backup for the same files as listed above, on the condition that files have been modified since the previous level 1 backup. If no previous level 1 backup has been done, this will be considered a level 1 backup.

15.4.2 Creating archives

Creating archives with BRU's X interface is simple. Click the **Backup** button to bring up the Backup File Selection interface (Figure 161).

<u>F</u> ile <u>O</u> ptio	ns <u>T</u> ape						<u>H</u> elp
	CD: /tmp		Dev	vice: -			
	/ ./ .ICE-unix/ .XO-lock	2					3
	X11-unix/ font-unix/ echo		Add >				
	install install.log		Add All				
P	orbit-root/ xbru/		<< Remove All				
			< Remo				
8 .0							
	K				1		
9	SS : : :	Save Load	Search	ļ	Options	Help	Close
and the second	Status: Ready						

Figure 161. Creating an archive

The box on the left displays the contents of the current directory. You can change the current directory by clicking in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and editing the CD entry.

You can add or remove files and directories from the backup list by selecting them and clicking on the appropriate button.

Chapter 15. Backup and recovery with BRU 227

BRU also provides a search function. Click the **Search** button to bring up a dialog box prompting you for a search string. This string can contain typical wildcards.

Backup Definitions are a way to define a set of commonly used backup options or preferences for use at a future time. You can create definitions for use with the backup scheduler or simply use the default selections.

After you have selected the files and directories that you wish to back up, click the **Continue** button. You will be led through a series of dialog boxes regarding your overwriting, appending, and labeling preferences for the archive. The backup will proceed by presenting you with an estimated time to completion and progress window.

15.4.3 Scheduling

To access the scheduling feature, select **File > Scheduler**.

<u>F</u> ile <u>O</u> pti	ons Tape	<u>H</u> elp
	BRU for X11 Scheduler Available Definitions: Run Weekly On: full full level1 Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun Backup on Days of the Month: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 1112 13 14 15 16 17 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 20 30 31 Current Definition: Backup ONCE on Date: 11 / 102 / 1999 Time to run (24hr clock): 11<:00 00	
	Tape Handling: Overwrite Append Delete	Close
	Status: Ready	

Figure 162. Scheduler

BRU provides a scheduling utility to automate the backup process for the busy administrator. There are three predefined definitions: Full, Level 1, and Level 2. These are the same definitions used in 15.4.1, "The big buttons" on page 226. You can create your own definitions in the creating archives interface.

From the BRU for X11 Scheduler interface, you can set scheduled backups based on weekly, monthly, or single dates. The scheduler is very flexible. In

order to take advantage of the scheduling options, you must save your desired schedule configuration and verify that the scheduler is being run from cron. To verify or add the cron entry, log in as root and type:

```
crontab -e
```

Insert the following line:

0/5 * * * * /usr/local/bin/bruschedule

If you chose a different path for the binaries during installation, change the entry accordingly.

Save the crontab entry. You can now schedule backups.

15.4.4 Restoring files

Restoring files with BRU's X interface is simple. BRU will retrieve the contents of the archive when you click the **Restore** button. After scanning the archive, the Restore File Selection interface (similar to Figure 161) will appear.



Note

If the on-tape directory is not in the archive, then BRU must scan the entire archive to get a listing. This can be very time consuming. When creating an archive, use the -G option to create the on-tape directory.

The box on the left displays the contents of the current directory that is stored on the tape. You can change the current directory by clicking in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and editing the CD entry.

You can add or remove files and directories from the backup list by selecting them and clicking on the appropriate button.

When you have selected all of the files and directories that you wish to restore, click the **Restore** button. A progress window will show each file as it is restored.

15.4.5 Listing and verifying archives

For listing the contents of an archive, BRU gives you three options:

1. Header - This option shows the archive header record, which lists the label, creation date, version, and serial number. For more information on the Header, consult the *BRU User's Guide*.

Chapter 15. Backup and recovery with BRU 229

- 2. Filenames only This option displays the on-tape directory. If the archive was created without using the -G option, BRU will scan the entire archive to create a list of files. You will be prompted before this occurs, as this can be a lengthy process.
- 3. Full details This option scans the entire archive for details such as file names, permissions, owners, size, modification times, etc. This process can be time consuming.

For verifying archives, BRU give you two options:

- Checksum Verification When archives are written, a checksum is calculated for each block of data. The checksum is stored in the header of each block. Checksum verification will read each bock, recalculate the checksum, and compare the checksum to the value in the header. Each file will be listed as it is verified, along with any errors found. If no errors are found, you know you have an accurate backup.
- 2. Differences Verification BRU compares the files in the archive to the files on the hard drive. Any differences, such as modification times, size, or files in the archive that are nonexistent on the hard drive are noted. An end of differences notice will be listed when the verification is complete.

15.5 Summary

For information on advanced features consult your *BRU User's Guide* or the BRU Web site at:

http://www.estinc.com/

Chapter 16. Setting up a Beowulf cluster

For a long time, parallel computing has been a domain of commercial vendors. By using Linux, it is now possible to create a powerful supercomputer using regular PCs with off-the-shelf components that are networked together with fast Ethernet cards or by using special high-speed interconnections like SCI or Myrinet. Beowulf clusters offer high performance computing at a fraction of the cost of a regular parallel computer (the price/performance ratio is usually between three and ten times better than for a "regular" supercomputer).

Beowulf was "the son of Scyld in the Scandian lands", a character from one of the oldest English epic poems. The legend tells that he defeated a monster called "Grendel" (see http://legends.dm.net/beowulf/index.html and http://www.lnstar.com/literature/beowulf/index.html and http://www.lnstar.com/literature/beowulf/beowulf/index.html and http://www.lnstar.com/literature/beowulf/beowulf/index.html and http://www.lnstar.com/literature/beowulf/beowulf/beowulf/index.html and http://www.lnstar.com/literature/beowulf/beowulf/beowulf/beowulf/beowulf/beowulf.html for historical background).

The first Beowulf cluster was set up by Donald Becker and Tom Sterling at the NASA Goddard Space Flight Center in 1994. Don Becker is also well known in the Linux community for his work on network drivers in the Linux kernel.

To make use of the parallelism, your software needs to be distributable between the nodes of a cluster. One way is to use libraries like PVM (Parallel Virtual Machine) or LAM/MPI (Local Area Metacomputer/Message Passing Interface). Regular programs are not suitable for distributed computing. There is now a special load-sharing software called MOSIX, which allows transparent process migration in a cluster. MOSIX can be used by any software that spawns multiple processes or threads. MOSIX requires a special patched Linux kernel and will not be covered here.

This chapter will focus on how to set up PVM and how to demonstrate the parallel computing power using a special version of the famous raytracing software POVray, called PVMPOVray. Raytracing is a method to create realistic images of a scene that is only described by coordinates, light sources, textures and surface properties like reflectivity or opacity. The raytracer now computes the reflections, shadows and refractions of all light rays in the picture and generates the respective image of this scene. Further information about POVray can be found on the POVray Web site at http://www.povray.org.

To set up a simple Beowulf cluster, you need at least two PCs running Linux and a functional TCP/IP network connection between them. Regular Ethernet is fine for starters; however, it does not offer the best performance, since it

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

has a rather high latency, which is crucial if you run applications that need to communicate a lot between nodes. To enable the communication between the nodes, PVM needs to be installed on all these machines as well. XPVM is a useful tool to monitor the communication and setup of the virtual machine, if the number of nodes is not too high (approx. 20-30). XPVM only needs to be installed on the master server.

When using SuSE Linux, make sure that the following packages are installed on all machines in the cluster. These packages can be found in the "beo" package series:

- pvm
- povray
- pvmpov

One machine acts as the master node that distributes jobs to the "slave" nodes. They should share a common work directory (NFS) and it should be possible to run a remote shell rsh from each node to another without being prompted for a password (edit the /etc/hosts.equiv file on each machine or create a ~/.rhosts file in the home directory of the user who wants to spawn jobs on remote machines). Start the PVM console by typing pvm on the command line. At the PVM command prompt pvm>, use the command add <Hostname> to add nodes to your virtual machine. PVM now attempts to start the PVM daemon process on the remote machine using rsh. If this fails, have a look at the log files on the remote machine. The command conf gives you a list of all nodes in your cluster that have successfully been added to PVM. Use quit to return to the shell. Alternatively, you can create a file that contains the names of all hosts that you want to use for your cluster (one on each line) and run pvm <hostfile>. This will automatically add all these hosts to the virtual machine. This is basically all you need to set up a basic Beowulf cluster. To make use of the parallel computing power, you now need to have a program that has been written using the PVM library. One example here is PVMPOVray.

To run XPVM, you first have to set the following environment variable:

export XPVM_ROOT=/usr/X11R6/lib/xpvm/

Now you can start xpvm by typing xpvm in a terminal window. Add the other nodes by clicking **Hosts**... -> **Other Hosts**... An icon should appear for each host that has been successfully added to the virtual machine. Click **Tasks**... -> **SPAWN** to start the distribution of a job. To give a demonstration, spawn the following command:

/usr/X11R6/bin/x-pvmpov +L/usr/lib/povray3/include +I/usr/lib/povray3/povscn/level2/skyvase.pov +O skyvase.tga +D +W640 +H400 +N

Set NTasks to the number of hosts involved.

A window should now pop up, and the picture will be created tile by tile. The finished image can be found as "skyvase.tga" in your home directory.

Chapter 16. Setting up a Beowulf cluster 233

Appendix A. RAID levels

This appendix has been included for the convenience of our readers who are unfamiliar with the disk subsystem technology known as RAID. We anticipate that this will be a small percentage of our readership as RAID is an important technology that most people implementing business-critical IT systems probably know about. RAID is mentioned in many places throughout this book and a basic understanding of its features and benefits will help you to understand why.

Even those who know about RAID already will be interested to hear about the new RAID-5E level supported by IBM's latest ServeRAID adapter.

A.1 What is RAID?

Although very commonly implemented using SCSI disks, RAID is independent of the specific disk technology being used. IBM Netfinity servers have RAID controllers that support SCSI, Fibre Channel, and SSA disk subsystems. In addition, Windows NT supports its own software-based RAID, though this is not often used, as much of the performance gained from having a dedicated hardware RAID controller is lost.

A typical RAID disk subsystem will have between two and six physical disks that are accessed by the processor by way of a specialized RAID controller adapter. The controller makes the array appear as a single large virtual disk to the processor. Because this disk has six completely independent head mechanisms for accessing data (in the case of a six-drive array), the potential for improved performance is immediately apparent. In an optimal situation, all six heads could be providing data to the system without the need for the time-consuming head-seeks to different areas of the disk, which would be necessary were a single physical disk being used.

However, the primary intent of a RAID implementation is to prevent the system served by the array from being affected by critical hard disk failures. Several different implementations of RAID have been defined and are referred to as levels. Each level has different characteristics and these levels allow a choice to be made to best meet the cost, security, and performance desired. The three most common implementations are levels 0, 1, and 5. These are the levels available with all of IBM's disk subsystems supported by Netfinity servers, namely SCSI, SSA, and Fibre Channel. The Netfinity ServeRAID-3HB Ultra2 SCSI adapter introduces a new enhanced RAID-5 described in A.1.5, "RAID-5 enhanced" on page 243.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

A.1.1 RAID-0

RAID-0, sometimes referred to as disk striping, is not really a RAID solution since there is no redundancy in the array at all. The disk controller merely stripes the data across the array so that a performance gain is achieved. This is illustrated in Figure 163:

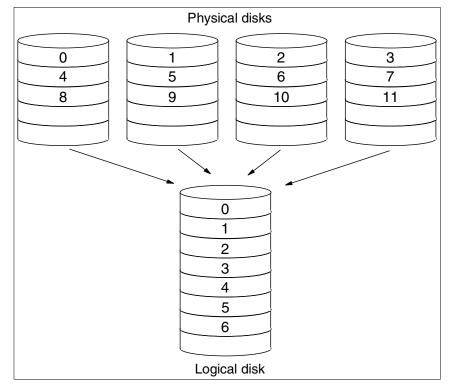


Figure 163. RAID-0 implementation

It is common for a striped disk array to map data in blocks with a stripe size that is an integer multiple of real drive track capacity. For example, IBM's ServeRAID adapters allow stripe sizes of 8 KB, 16 KB, 32 KB or 64 KB, selectable during initialization of the array. Applications get better performance if their data I/O size matches the stripe size of the array so it is recommended that you take this into consideration when defining your RAID sets.

Advantages:

- Performance improvement in many cases.
- All disk space available for data.

236 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

Disadvantages:

• No redundancy.

A.1.2 RAID-1 and RAID-1E

RAID-1, or disk mirroring, offers true redundancy. Each stripe is duplicated, or mirrored, on another disk in the array. In its simplest form, there are two disks where the second is a simple copy of the first. If the first disk fails then the second can be used without any loss of data. Some performance enhancement is achieved by reading data from both drives. Certain operating systems, including Windows NT, provide direct support for disk mirroring. There is a performance overhead, however, as the processor has to issue duplicate write commands. Hardware solutions where the controller handles the duplicate writes are preferred.

When more than two disks are available, the duplication scheme can be a little more complex to allow striping with disk mirroring, also known as Enhanced RAID-1. An example is shown in Figure 164:

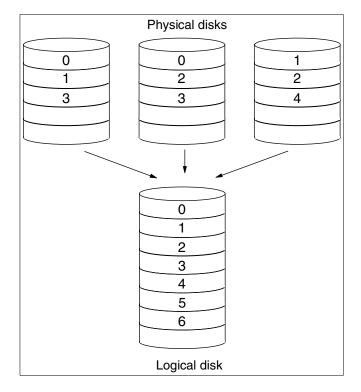


Figure 164. RAID-1E implementation

Appendix A. RAID levels 237

As you can see, any one disk can be removed from the array without loss of information because each data stripe exists on two physical disks. The controller detects a failed disk and redirects requests for data from the failed drive to the drive containing the copy of the data. When a drive has failed, the replacement drive can be rebuilt using the data from the remaining drives in the array.

When a disk fails, there is only one copy of the data that was on the failed disk available to the system. The system has lost its redundancy, and if another disk fails, data loss is the result. To avoid this, failed disks should be replaced as soon as possible. The controller then rebuilds the data that was on the failed disk from the remaining drives and writes it to the new disk, restoring the redundancy.

To avoid having to manually replace a failed disk, IBM's Netfinity ServeRAID controllers implement *hot spare* disks. A hot spare disk is held idle until a failure occurs, at which point the controller immediately starts to rebuild the lost data onto the hot spare, minimizing the time when redundancy is lost. The controller continues to provide data to the system while the rebuild takes place.

When you replace the failed drive, its replacement becomes the array's new hot spare.

Advantages:

- Performance improvement in many cases.
- Redundancy. A drive can fail without loss of data.

Disadvantages:

• Cost. The logical disk has only half the capacity of the physical disks.

A.1.3 RAID-10

As we have seen, RAID-1 offers the potential for performance improvement as well as redundancy. RAID-10 is a variant of RAID-1 that effectively creates a mirror copy of a RAID-0 array.

In large disk subsystems that require, for example, two external storage enclosures, it would be beneficial to ensure that mirrored data exists in both units. This would allow an entire unit, including its power supply or connecting cables, to fail without interrupting operation. RAID-10 does just this by allowing one RAID-0 array to be contained in one of the enclosures and its mirror copy in the other. A diagram of a RAID-10 configuration is shown below:

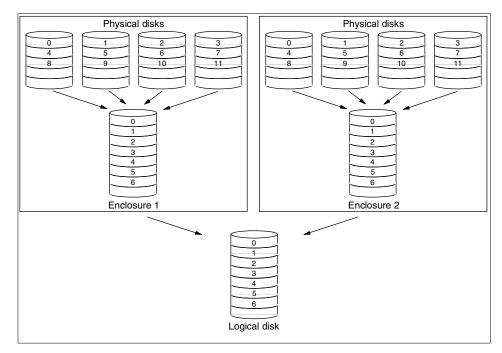


Figure 165. RAID-10 configuration

RAID-10 configurations are supported by the IBM Netfinity Fibre Channel RAID Controller Unit.

Advantages:

- Performance improvement in many cases.
- Redundancy. A drive can fail without loss of data.
- Provides fault tolerance for disk enclosures.

Disadvantages:

- Cost. The logical disk has only half the capacity of the physical disks.
- Slightly less flexible than RAID-1E (requires an even number of disks).

A.1.4 RAID-5

RAID-5 is one of the most capable and efficient ways of building redundancy into the disk subsystem. The way redundancy is implemented, capacity loss is equal to one of the drives in the array and data striping provides the read performance gains from RAID-0 and RAID-1. The principles behind RAID-5 are very simple and are closely related to the parity methods sometimes used for computer memory subsystems. In memory, the parity bit is formed by

Appendix A. RAID levels 239

evaluating the number of 1 bits in a single byte. For RAID-5, if we take the example of a four-drive array, three stripes of data are written to three of the drives and the bit-by-bit parity of the three stripes is written to the fourth drive.

As an example, we can look at the first byte of each stripe and see what this means for the parity stripe. Let us assume that the first byte of stripes 1, 2, and 3 are the letters A, B, and G respectively. The binary code for these characters is 01000001, 01000010 and 01000111 respectively.

We can now calculate the first byte of the parity block. Using the convention that an odd number of 1s in the data generates a 1 in the parity, the first parity byte is 01000100 (see Table 29). This is called *even parity* because there is always an even number of 1s if we look at the data and the parity together. Odd parity could have been chosen; the choice is of no importance as long as it is consistent.

Disk 1 "A"	Disk 2 "B"	Disk 3 "G"	Disk 4 Parity
0	▶ 0	▶ 0 ─	▶ 0
1	▶ 1 ──	→ 1 →	▶ 1
0	▶ 0	▶ 0 ──	▶ 0
0	▶ 0 ──	▶ 0 ──	▶ 0
0	▶ 0 ──	▶ 0 ──	▶ 0
0	► 0 ──	► 1 —	▶ 1
0	▶ 1 ──	▶ 1 ──	▶ 0
1	▶ 0 ──	→ 1 ──	▶ 0

Table 29. Generation of parity data for RAID-5

Calculating the parity for the second byte is performed using the same method, and so on. In this way, the entire parity stripe for the first three data stripes can be calculated and stored on the fourth disk.

The presence of parity information allows any disk to fail without loss of data.

In the above example, if drive 2 fails (with B as its first byte) there is enough information in the parity byte and the data on the remaining drives to reconstruct the missing data. The controller has to look at the data on the remaining drives and calculate what drive 2's data must have been to

maintain even parity. Because of this, a RAID-5 array with a failed drive can continue to provide the system with all the data from the failed drive.

Performance will suffer, of course, because the controller has to look at the data from all drives when a request is made to the failed one. However, that is better than losing the system completely. A RAID-5 array with a failed drive is said to be critical, since the loss of another drive will cause lost data. For this reason, the use of hot spare drives in a RAID-5 array is as important as in RAID-1.

The simplest implementation would always store the parity on disk 4 (in fact, this is the case in RAID-4, which is hardly ever implemented for the reason about to be explained). Disk reads are then serviced in much the same way as a level 0 array with three disks. However, writing to a RAID-5 array would then suffer from a performance bottleneck. Each write requires that both real data and parity data are updated. Therefore, the single parity disk would have to be written to every time any of the other disks were modified. To avoid this, the parity data is also striped, as shown in Figure 166, spreading the load across the entire array.

Appendix A. RAID levels 241

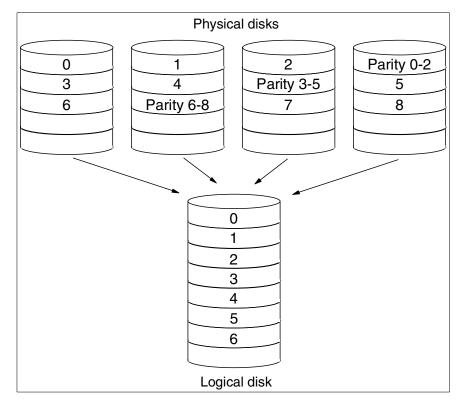


Figure 166. RAID-5 implementation

The consequence of having to update the parity information means that for every stripe written to the virtual disk, the controller has to read the old data from the stripe being updated and the associated parity stripe. Then the necessary changes to the parity stripe have to be calculated based on the old and the new data. All of this complexity is hidden from the processor, but the effect on the system is that writes are much slower than reads. This can be offset to a greater or lesser extent by the use of a cache on the RAID controller. IBM's ServeRAID controllers have cache as standard, which is used to hold the new data while the calculations are being performed. Meanwhile, the processor can continue as though the write has taken place. Battery backup options for the cache, available for some controllers, mean that data loss is kept to a minimum even if the controller fails with data still in the cache.

Advantages:

- Performance improvement in many cases.
- Redundancy. A drive can fail without loss of data.
- 242 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

• Storage overhead is equal to the size of only one drive.

Disadvantages:

• Overhead associated with writes can be detrimental to performance in applications where the write/read ratio is high. A controller cache can alleviate this.

A.1.5 RAID-5 enhanced

RAID-5 Enhanced (RAID-5E) puts hot spare drives to work to improve reliability and performance. A hot spare is normally inactive during array operation and is not used until a drive fails. By utilizing unallocated space on the drives in the array, a virtual distributed hot spare (DHS) can be created to improve reliability and performance. Figure 167 shows normal operation of a RAID-5E array. The data areas of the individual disks shown contain the application data and stripe parity data as for a normal RAID-5 array:

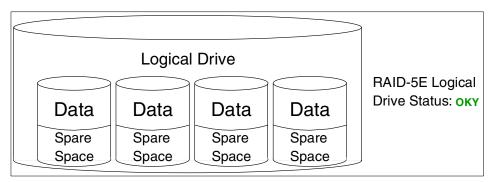


Figure 167. RAID-5E array: normal operation

In the event of a physical drive failing, its status will change to Defunct Disk Drive (DDD) and the ServeRAID adapter will start rearranging the data the disk contained into the spare space on the other drives in the array, provided there is enough space, of course.

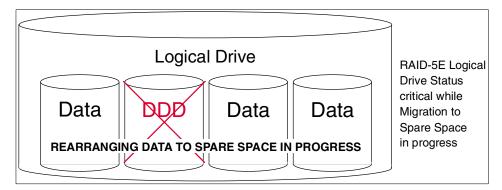


Figure 168. RAID-5E array: single physical disk failure

During the migration of data, the logical drive will be in a critical, nonredundant state. As soon as all the data is rearranged, the logical drive will be marked OKY (Okay) and have full redundancy again. This is illustrated in Figure 169.

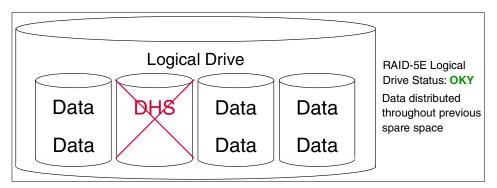


Figure 169. RAID-5E array: data distributed throughout previous spare space

In the event of a second physical disk failure before the previously failed disk has been replaced, illustrated in Figure 170, normal RAID-5 procedures will be taken to provide service to the system through the checksum calculations described in A.1.4, "RAID-5" on page 239.

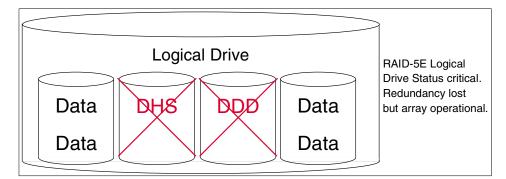


Figure 170. RAID-5E array: second physical disk failure

Advantages (compared to RAID-5):

- 15 20% performance improvement for smaller arrays with typical data transfer size.
- Protects data, even in the event of a two-drive failure.

Disadvantages:

• Migration time.

Design characteristics:

- One RAID-5E logical drive per array.
- Minimum of four physical drives in array configured for RAID-5E logical drive.

A.1.6 Orthogonal RAID-5

Orthogonal RAID-5 is an enhancement of RAID-5 in the sense that it is powered by more than one disk controller and hence improves both reliability and performance.

The performance of a disk subsystem depends on more than just the underlying performance of the disks. Multiple requests to one disk or across one adapter will typically take longer to satisfy than the same number of requests to multiple disks across multiple adapters.

In addition, the overall reliability of a standard RAID-5 system is dependent on the reliability of the one disk adapter to which all of the disks are connected. Orthogonal RAID-5 solves both of these concerns by grouping the disk arrays orthogonally to the disk adapters, SCSI buses, and power cables.

Appendix A. RAID levels 245

This would normally be implemented as a four-drive orthogonal RAID-5 array, where each disk would be connected to a different adapter and SCSI bus.

The result of this is that any one component of the disk subsystems, not just a disk drive, can fail with no loss of data and no interruption to system operation.

A.1.7 Performance

With different parameters affecting your RAID solution it is virtually impossible to find the perfect combination without measuring live throughput. Increasing redundancy also increases price and possibly lowers performance due to added overhead, which could be solved with more or faster controllers, again increasing the price.

As you can see in Figure 171 on page 247, speed is a significant issue when deciding on RAID level. The numbers shown in this figure and in Figure 172 on page 248 are based on benchmark testing performed by IBM's Netfinity server development team. Specific systems may not show precisely the same performance ratios but the figures are representative of typical performance data.

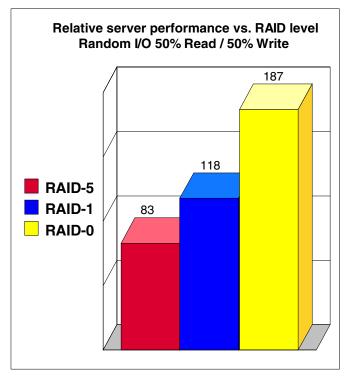


Figure 171. Relative server performance versus RAID strategy

It is important to point out that the speed difference in Figure 171 is mainly due to the same number of drives being used for all tests. Generally, the more drives you use in your array, the faster it gets, but it also requires your RAID controller to be able to attach more drives when using RAID-1 or RAID-5 to get optimal performance.

Using the same number of drives:

- RAID-0 gives up to 50% more throughput than RAID-1.
- RAID-1 gives up to 50% more throughput than RAID-5.

The above test was done using a worst-case scenario with 50% reads and 50% writes. A high write/read ratio adversely affects the performance of RAID-1 and RAID-5 arrays, so throughput improves with a higher percentage of reads, which is generally more common in a real-world environment.

 While increasing the number of drives boosts performance, it also increases the price. Figure 172 on page 248 shows what happens with I/O throughput when we add drives to a RAID-0 array.

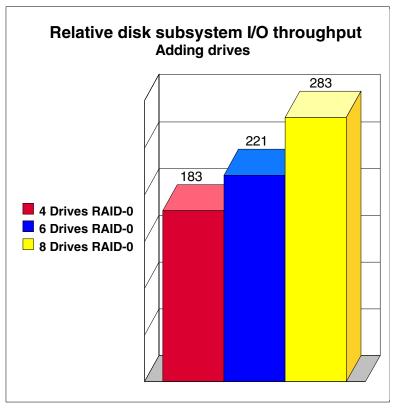


Figure 172. Adding drives to an array

Server throughput improves up to 50% when the number of drives is doubled for a RAID-0 and similar gains are shown for RAID-1 and RAID-5.

A.1.8 Recommendations

Before configuring your array you have to decide on a stripe size for the array. When configuring for maximum performance, Table 30 shows some rules of thumb:

Environment	Stripe size	Read-ahead
Groupware (Lotus Notes, Exchange)	16 KB	ON
Database Server (Oracle, SQL Server, DB/2)	16 KB	OFF
File Server (Windows NT 4.0, NetWare 4.1x)	16 KB	ON

Table 30. Recommended stripe configurations for ServeRAID adapters

Environment	Stripe size	Read-ahead
Web Server	8 KB	OFF
Other	8 KB	ON

A.1.9 Summary

RAID is an excellent and proven technology for protecting your data against the possibility of hard disk failure. IBM has a range of RAID controllers that bring the benefits of the technology to our Netfinity servers. As Intel-based servers become more and more critical to our customers' businesses, they are demanding the reliability provided by RAID.

Here is a quick summary of the different RAID levels we have covered in this appendix:

RAID-0: Block interleave data striping without parity

- Best performance of all RAID levels
- Drive seek times and latencies effectively reduced by parallel operation
- Significantly outperforms single large disk

RAID-1: Disk mirroring

- Fast and reliable but requires 100% disk space overhead
- Two copies of data maintained
- No performance degradation with a single disk failure
- Writes are slower than a single disk, reads are quicker

RAID-1E: Data stripe mirroring

- All the benefits of RAID-1
- Provides mirroring with an odd number of drives

RAID-10: Mirrored RAID-0 arrays

- All the benefits of RAID-1
- Can provide fault tolerance for entire storage enclosures

RAID-5: Block interleave data striping with distributed parity

- Best for random transactions
- · Poor for large sequential reads if request is larger than block size
- Block size is the key to performance; must be larger than typical request size

Appendix A. RAID levels 249

• Performance degrades in recovery mode, that is, when a single drive has failed

RAID-5E: RAID-5 with distributed hot spare

- All the benefits of RAID-5
- 15 20% performance improvement for smaller arrays
- · Protects data, even in the event of a two-drive failure

Orthogonal RAID-5: RAID-5 with multiple orthogonal disk adapters

- All the benefits of RAID-5
- Improved performance (due to load being spread across disk adapters)
- Improved reliability due to redundancy of disk adapters and disks

Table 31 gives you a summary of RAID performance characteristics:

RAID level	Capacity	Large transfers	I/O rate	Data availability
RAID-0	Excellent	Very Good	Very Good	Poor ¹
RAID-1/1E	Moderate	Good	Good	Good
RAID-10	Moderate	Good	Good	Very Good
RAID-5	Very Good	Very Good	Good	Good
RAID-5E	Very Good	Very Good	Good to Very Good	Very Good
Orthogonal RAID-5	Very Good	Very Good	Good	Very Good
¹ Availability = MTBF of one disk divided by the number of disks in the array				

 Table 31. Summary of RAID performance characteristics

If you want to learn more about RAID, the RAID Advisory Board, of which IBM is an active member, exists to standardize terminology and provide information about RAID technology. Its Web site can be found at the following URL:

http://www.raid-advisory.com/

Appendix B. Special notices

This publication is intended to help customers, business partners and IBM employees implement SuSE Linux. The information in this publication is not intended as the specification of any programming interfaces that are provided by SuSE Linux. See the PUBLICATIONS section of the IBM Programming for more information about what publications are considered to be product documentation.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent program that does not infringe any of IBM's intellectual property rights may be used instead of the IBM product, program or service.

Information in this book was developed in conjunction with use of the equipment specified, and is limited in application to those specific hardware and software products and levels.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact IBM Corporation, Dept. 600A, Mail Drop 1329, Somers, NY 10589 USA.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The information contained in this document has not been submitted to any formal IBM test and is distributed AS IS. The use of this information or the implementation of any of these techniques is a customer responsibility and depends on the customer's ability to evaluate and integrate them into the customer's operational environment. While each item may have been reviewed by IBM for accuracy in a specific situation, there is no guarantee that the same or similar results will be obtained elsewhere. Customers

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

attempting to adapt these techniques to their own environments do so at their own risk.

Any pointers in this publication to external Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of these Web sites.

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and/or other countries:

AIX	AS/400
DB2	Home Director
IBM	Netfinity
OS/2	RS/6000
ServeRAID	ServerProven
SP	System/390
TechConnect	WebSphere

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

C-bus is a trademark of Corollary, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PC Direct is a trademark of Ziff Communications Company in the United States and/or other countries and is used by IBM Corporation under license.

ActionMedia, LANDesk, MMX, Pentium and ProShare are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and/or other countries licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

SET and the SET logo are trademarks owned by SET Secure Electronic Transaction LLC.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Appendix B. Special notices 253

Appendix C. Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this redbook.

C.1 International Technical Support Organization publications

For information on ordering these ITSO publications see "How to get IBM Redbooks" on page 259.

- Linux for WebSphere and DB2 Servers, SG24-5850
- Netfinity and Red Hat Linux Integration Guide, SG24-5853
- Netfinity and Caldera OpenLinux Integration Guide, SG24-5861
- Netfinity and TurboLinux Integration Guide, SG24-5862

C.2 IBM Redbooks collections

Redbooks are also available on the following CD-ROMs. Click the CD-ROMs button at http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/ for information about all the CD-ROMs offered, updates and formats.

CD-ROM Title	Collection Kit Number
System/390 Redbooks Collection	SK2T-2177
Networking and Systems Management Redbooks Collection	SK2T-6022
Transaction Processing and Data Management Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8038
Lotus Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8039
Tivoli Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8044
AS/400 Redbooks Collection	SK2T-2849
Netfinity Hardware and Software Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8046
RS/6000 Redbooks Collection (BkMgr)	SK2T-8040
RS/6000 Redbooks Collection (PDF Format)	SK2T-8043
Application Development Redbooks Collection	SK2T-8037
IBM Enterprise Storage and Systems Management Solutions	SK3T-3694

C.3 Other publications

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

• Understanding and Deploying LDAP Directory Services, by Timothy Howes, Mark Smith, and Gordon Good, ISBN: 1578700701

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

• *Using Samba* by Robert Eckstein, David Collier-Brown and Peter Kelly, published by O'Reilly, available online at:

http://www.oreilly.com/catalog/samba/chapter/book/index.html

• The Linux NIS(YP)/NYS/NIS+ HOWTO by Thorsten Kakuk, found at:

http://metalab.unc.edu/pub/Linux/docs/HOWTO/NIS-HOWTO.

- Managing NFS and NIS, by Hal Stern, ISBN 0937175757
- "Don't make me LDAP you Lightweight Directory Access Protocol: What it is, why you want it", available from the LinuxWorld Web site at:

http://www.linuxworld.com/linuxworld/lw-1999-03/lw-03-uptime.html

• LDAP how-tos are available from the Linux Documentation project Web site at:

http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/LDAP-HOWTO.html

C.4 Referenced Web sites

- http://www.redbooks.ibm.com
- http://www.suse.de/en/
- http://www.linuxbase.org
- http://www.lpi.org
- http://www.li18nux.org/
- http://www.suse.com
- http://www.suse.de/en/support/download/updates/62_update.html
- ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/suse/i386/updates/6.2/
- ftp://ftp.pc.ibm.com/pcicrse/psref
- http://www.pc.ibm.com/support/
- http://www.pc.ibm.com/us/netfinity/tech_library.html
- http://cdb.suse.de/cdb_english.html
- http://www.keylabs.com/linux/linux_results.html
- ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/suse/i386/update/6.2/disks/servraid
- ftp://ftp.suse.com/pub/SuSE-Linux/suse_update/XFree86-3.3.5-SuSE/SuS E-6.2/xsvga.rpm
- http://www.rpm.org
- http://www.developer.ibm.com/welcome/netfinity/serveraid.html
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/DNS-HOWTO.html
- http://www.samba.org
- http://www.oreilly.com/catalog/samba/chapter/book/index.html
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/SMB-HOWTO.html
- http://www.netcraft.com/survey/
- http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/
- http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/download.html
- 256 Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide

- http://www-4.ibm.com/software/webservers/httpservers/doc/v136/readme_ httpserver.htm
- http://www.apache.org/docs/misc/perf-tuning.html
- http://www.rustcorp.com/linux/ipchains
- http://www.bb-zone.com/FWHowTo/index.html
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Firewall-HOWTO.html
- http://www.sendmail.org
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Mail-User-HOWTO.html
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Mail-Administrator-HOWTO.html
- http://www.postfix.org
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/NFS-HOWTO.html
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/NIS-HOWTO.html
- http://www.suse.de/~kukuk/
- http://www.openIdap.org/incoming/roaming-073099.tar.gz
- http://www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/LDAP-HOWTO.html
- http://www.OpenLDAP.org
- http://www.linuxworld.com/linuxworld/lw-1999-03/lw-03-uptime.html
- http://tune.linux.com
- http://www.tunelinux.com
- http://www.linux-mandrake.com/lothar/
- http://www.textuality.com/bonnie/
- http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html
- http://www.estinc.com/
- http://legends.dm.net/beowulf/index.html
- http://www.Instar.com/literature/beowulf/beowulf.html
- http://www.povray.org
- http://www.raid-advisory.com/

Appendix C. Related publications 257

How to get IBM Redbooks

This section explains how both customers and IBM employees can find out about ITSO redbooks, redpieces, and CD-ROMs. A form for ordering books and CD-ROMs by fax or e-mail is also provided.

• Redbooks Web Site http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/

Search for, view, download, or order hardcopy/CD-ROM redbooks from the redbooks Web site. Also read redpieces and download additional materials (code samples or diskette/CD-ROM images) from this redbooks site.

Redpieces are redbooks in progress; not all redbooks become redpieces and sometimes just a few chapters will be published this way. The intent is to get the information out much quicker than the formal publishing process allows.

• E-mail Orders

Send orders by e-mail including information from the redbooks fax order form to:

In United States Outside North America	e-mail address usib6fpl@ibmmail.com Contact information is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl
Telephone Orders	
United States (toll free) Canada (toll free) Outside North America	1-800-879-2755 1-800-IBM-4YOU Country coordinator phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl
Fax Orders	
United States (toll free) Canada Outside North America	1-800-445-9269 1-403-267-4455 Fax phone number is in the "How to Order" section at this site: http://www.elink.ibmlink.ibm.com/pbl/pbl

This information was current at the time of publication, but is continually subject to change. The latest information may be found at the redbooks Web site.

IBM Intranet for Employees

IBM employees may register for information on workshops, residencies, and redbooks by accessing the IBM Intranet Web site at http://w3.itso.ibm.com/ and clicking the ITSO Mailing List button. Look in the Materials repository for workshops, presentations, papers, and Web pages developed and written by the ITSO technical professionals; click the Additional Materials button. Employees may access MyNews at http://w3.ibm.com/ for redbook, residency, and workshop announcements.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

IBM Redbooks fax order form	IBM	Redboo	ks fax	order	form
-----------------------------	-----	--------	--------	-------	------

Please send me the following:

Title	Orc	der Number	Quantity
First name	Last name		
Company			
Address			
City	Postal code	Country	
Telephone number	Telefax number	VAT number	
Invoice to customer number			
Credit card number			
Credit card expiration date	Card issued to	Signature	

We accept American Express, Diners, Eurocard, Master Card, and Visa. Payment by credit card not available in all countries. Signature mandatory for credit card payment.

List of abbreviations

AIX	advanced interactive executive	IDE	integrated drive electronics
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System	IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
BOOTP	boot protocol	I/O	input/output
bpp	bits per pixel	IP	Internet Protocol
BRU	Backup and Restore Utility	IPX/SPX	Internet Packet exchange/Sequenced Packet exchange
CGI	Common Gateway Interface	IRC	Internet Relay Chat
CIFS	Common Internet File System	ISA	Industry Standard Architecture
CPU	central processing unit	ISDN	integrated-services digital network
DARPA	Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency	ISO	International Organization for Standardization
DAT	digital audio tape	ITSO	International Technical
DHCP	Dynamic Host		Support Organization
DMA	Configuration Protocol direct memory access	ITU	International Telecommunications
DNS	Domain Name Service		Union
FQDN	fully qualified domain	KB	kilobyte
	name	KDE	K Desktop Environment
FTP	file transport protocol	LAN	local area network
GB	gigabyte	LDAP	Lightweight Directory
GPM	Gereral Purpose		Access Protocol
	Mouse	LILO	Linux Loader
GUI	graphical user interface	MB	megabyte
HTML	Hypertext Markup Language	MHz	Megahertz
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer	mm	milimeter
	Protocol	MTA	Mail Transfer Agent
Hz	Hertz	NAT	Network Address Translation
IBM	International Business Machines Corporation	NFS	Network File System
		NIC	Network Interface Card

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

NIS	Notwork Information	URL	Universal Resource
NIS	Network Information System	URL	Universal Resource Locator
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect	VGA	video graphics array
PCMCIA	Personal Computer	WINS	Windows Internet Name Service
	Memory Card International Association	www	World Wide Web
PNP	Plug and Play		
POP	Post Office Protocol		
RAID	redundant array of imdependent disks		
RAM	random access memory		
RFC	Request for Comments		
RPC	Remote Procedure Call		
RPM	Red Hat Package Manager		
SCSI	small computer system interface		
SMB	Server Message Block		
SMBFS	Samba File System		
SMP	symmetric multiprocessing		
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol		
SNMP	simple network management protocol		
SSA	serial storage architecture		
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer		
SVGA	super video graphics array		
SWAT	Samba Web Administration Tool		
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol		

Index

Α

Adaptec 28 Administration and Monitoring Program 98 AMD chipset 12 Apache 143 features 143 installation 145 performance tips 154 ash shell 59

В

backup 223 bash shell 59 Beowulf 231 packages 232 bind4 105 bind8 105 **BM HTTP Server** Administration Server 149 BRU 223 additional information 230 basic backup 225 basic restore 225 commands 225 installation 223 restore files 229 schedule backup 228 X interface 226

С

csh shell 59

D

DAP 200 DARPA 182 DCHP relay agent 171 devinfo 82 DHCP 33, 169, 170 installation 169 YaST 169 disk striping 236 disk subsystem See also RAID

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

RAID performance 246 DNS 103, 104, 105 configuration 105 installation 105 YaST 106

Ε

Ethernet 66

F

firewall 157 additional information 165, 168 FQDN 103 FTP 14, 161

G

getconfig 76 getstatus 81

Н

hdparm 222 Hot Swap Rebuild 84 hsrebuild 83

L

IBM HTTP Server 143, 144 features 144 installation 146 performance tips 155 IBM Netfinity 3000 3 IBM Netfinity 3500 M10 3 IBM Netfinity servers 1, 5 IBM ServeRAID 12, 40, 43, 75 Administration and Monitoring Program 96 BIOS 41 drive replace 88, 89 drive states 85 files 75 firmware 41 ipsadm 97 ipsmon 95 ipssend devinfo 82 getconfig 76, 77, 78, 79, 85 getstatus 81

hsrebuild 83 rebuild 87 setstate 84 synch 85 unattended 86 ipssend 76 ipsutil 75 RPM 75 IETF 200 Intel 12 introduction 1 IP - optimize as router not host 158 IP Chains 158, 161, 163, 165 IP forwarding 158, 160 IP masquerading 158, 161, 162 ipsadm 97 ipsmon 95 ipssend 76 ipsutil 75 ISO 200

Κ

KDE 1, 14, 215 Keylabs 5 ksh shell 59 KTop 215

L

LDAP 144, 199 additional information 210 installation 201 Netscape configuration 207 roaming profiles 203 start 206 LILO 28, 29, 31 Linus Torvalds 1 Linux commands 73 Linuxrc 7, 10, 12 locate 73 Lothar project 216

Μ

Midnight Commander (MC) 39 MTA 173

Ν

name resolution 104 NAT 157 NetBIOS 113 netperf 222 network configuration 65 NFS 14, 34, 181, 182 access data 182 client 186 installation 181 nfsd 182 portmap 182 restart 185 rpc.kmountd 182 rpc.kstatd 182 start 185 stop 185 NIS 34, 189 additional information 197 client configuration 194 installation 190 packages 190 server configuration 190 slave server 193 NSM 182

Ρ

packet filtering with IP Chains 157 performance of RAID subsystems 246 performance tools Powertweak 212 performance tools in Linux 211 Personal Systems Reference sheets 5 PHP 143 POVray 231 pstree 214 PVMPOVray 231

R

RAID 75 described 235 level 0 (RAID-0) 236 level 1 (RAID-1, RAID-1E) 237 level 10 (RAID-10) 238 level 5 (RAID-5) 239 level 5 enhanced (RAID-5E) 243 orthogonal RAID-5 245

performance 246 RAID Advisory Board 250 recommendations 248 software-based 235 summary of RAID levels 249 support for two disk failures 243 supported disk technologies 235 rebuild 87 recovery 223 RFC 200 RPC 181, 182, 192 RPM 51, 56, 75

S S3 6

Trio3D 44 Samba 113, 114 additional information 141 configuration 114 Global Settings 114 installation 113 name resolution settings 118 printer shares 121 printing settings 115 restart 122 security settings 116 share permissions 120 shares 119 smb.conf 115 start 122 stop 122 SWAT 122, 125 globals 126 passwords 139 printer shares 134 restart 133 restart WINS 134 server status 137 shares 128, 130, 131 tuning 140 WINS 119 SaX 44, 45, 50 keyboard configuration 47 monitor configuration 49 mouse configuration 45, 46 screen selection 50 server selection 48 Sendmail 173, 175, 177

additional information 178 installation 173 YaST 174 setstate 84 sh shell 59 SMB 113 SMBFS 113 SNMP 144 SSL 144 SuSE bug fixes 3 FTP server 3 SuSE Linux 6.3 4, 105, 162, 174, 182 SuSE installation 3, 6, 8 Adaptec 11 display 9 end / reboot 11 hardware considerations 4, 5 CD-ROM 4 CPU 4 display adapter 4 hard drives 4 monitor 4 mouse 4 network card 4 RAM 4 SCSI adapter 4 hardware probe 12 installation workflow 6 kernel modules 11 keyboard 10 language 9 LILO 29 mouse 38 network 12 network configuration 32 package installation 24, 26 partitioning 15, 16, 17, 19 root password 36 Sendmail 35 settings 11 start installation / system 11 swap 19,21 system information 11 time zone 32 user account 37 YaST 8 SuSE Linux 6.2 1 SWAT 122, 125

synch 85 system administration 51 command line tools 61, 62, 63 group administration 57 RPM 51 software packages 51 series 53 using RPM 56 user administration 57

Т

tcsh shell 59 token-ring 66 top 214

U

unattended 86 updatedb 73

V

VESA 49 vmstat 222

W

WINS 113

Х

X.500 199, 200 XFree86 6, 14, 44 X-Windows 38

Υ

YaST 7, 8, 14, 16, 19, 21, 37, 51, 57, 59 group administration 57 network configuration 65, 69 system administration 64 user administration 57

Ζ

zsh shell 59

IBM Redbooks evaluation

Netfinity and SuSE Linux Integration Guide SG24-5863-00

Your feedback is very important to help us maintain the quality of ITSO redbooks. Please complete this questionnaire and return it using one of the following methods:

- Use the online evaluation form found at http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/
- Fax this form to: USA International Access Code + 1 914 432 8264
- Send your comments in an Internet note to redbook@us.ibm.com

Which of the following best describes you?

Customer _ Business Partner _ Solution Developer _ IB _ None of the above	M employee
Please rate your overall satisfaction with this book using the scale: (1 = very good, 2 = good, 3 = average, 4 = poor, 5 = very poor)	
Overall Satisfaction	
Please answer the following questions:	
Was this redbook published in time for your needs? Yes No	_
If no, please explain:	
What other redbooks would you like to see published?	
Comments/Suggestions: (THANK YOU FOR YOUR FEEDBACK!)	

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1999

SG24-5863-00 Printed in the U.S.A.

